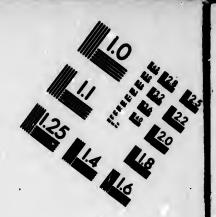


٠

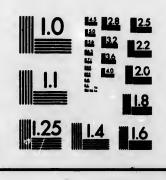


SU

0

a11

IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)





ar.

Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580 (716) 872-4503

CIHM/ICMH Microfiche Series.

í,

Ö

CIHM/ICMH Collection de microfiches.



98

Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadian de microreproductions historiques

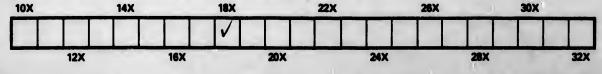
Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques at bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below. L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous. 22

A.,

Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur		Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée		Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée		Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque		Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur		Pages detached/ Pages détachées
Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)		Showthrough/ Transparence
Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur	2	Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents		Includes supplementary material/ Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ Lareliurs serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la		Only edition available/ Seule édition disponible
distortion le long de la marge intérieure Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées iors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.		Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/ Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.
Addraonal comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires;		
		0

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/ Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.



The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

Seminary of Quebec Library

teils

ub i

odifier

mage

rata

pelure, h à

32X

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \longrightarrow (meaning "CON-TINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, Sharts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:

1 2 3

L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

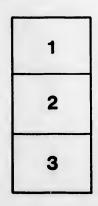
Séminaire de Québec Bibliothèque

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tonu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaixe filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

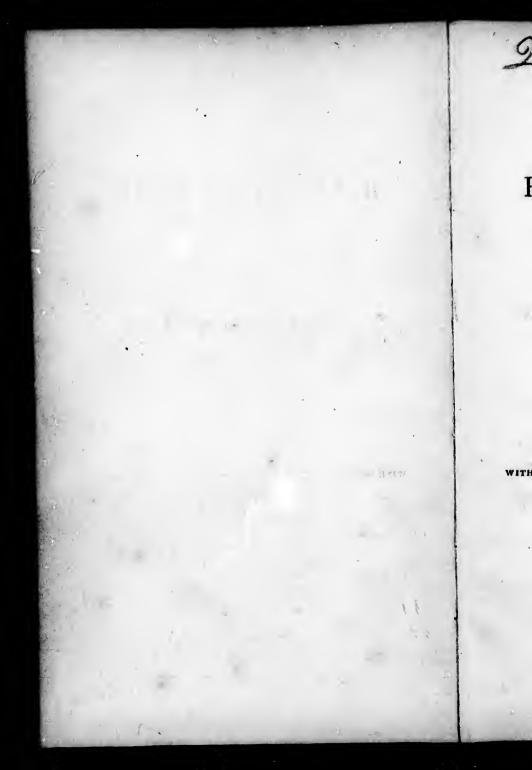
Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant per la premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \longrightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'imeges nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



1	2	3
4	5	6



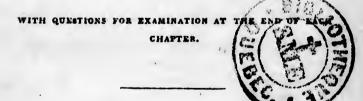
265

HISTORY OF ROME,

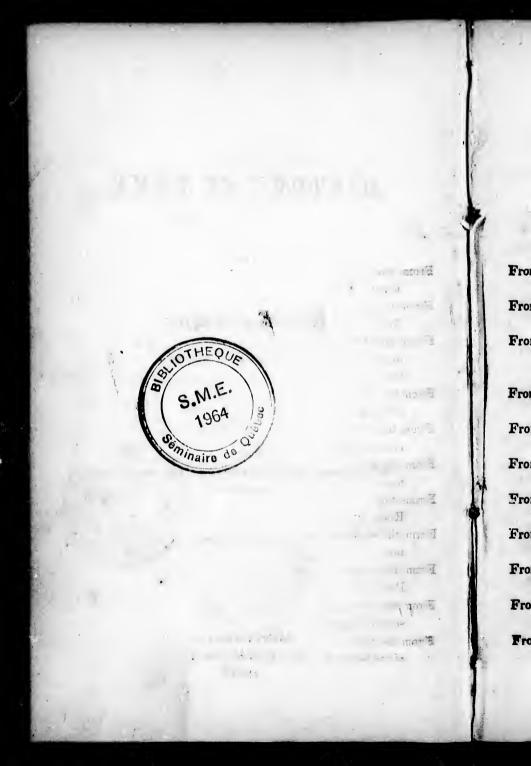
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

FOR

Biblioihèque, Le Séminaire de Québec, 3, rue de l'Université, Québec 4, QUE.



MONTREAL : H. R A M S A Y. 1854.



CONTENTS.

200 13

1. 11 . 11

412 - ^Ta

E TUR

भारत ये। 1

arc=FL

Tur E.

ma+E

From the origin of the Romans to the death of	PAGE
Romulus,	1
From the death of Romulus, to the death of Ancus	
Martius, the fourth king of Rome	6
From the death of Ancus Martius to the banish-	
ment of Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh and	•
last king of Rome From the banishment of Tarquin, to the election	9
of Tribunes	14
From the election of the Tribunes to the appoint-	
ment of the Decemviri	20 -
From the creation of the Decemviri to the invest-	•
ment of Veii	26
From the investment of Veii, to the burning of	
Rome by the Gauls	33
From the wars with the Samnites, to the first Punic war	
From the commencement to the close of the first	38
Punic war	45
From the close of the first, to the close of the	
second Punic war	49
From the end of the second Punic war, to the end	
of the sedition of the Gracchi	57

From the sedition of the Gracchi to the beginning	
of the First Triumvirate	64
From the forming of the First Triunvirate to the	
death of Pompey	72
From the destruction of the Commonwealth to the	
death of Julius Cæsar	82
From the death of Cæsar to the death of Brutus	89
From the death of Brutus to the death of Antony	95
From the death of Antony, to the death of	
Tiberius	104
From the death of Tiberius, to the death of Nero	113
From the death of Nero, to the death of Domitian	122
From the death of Domitian to the death of	
Adrian	131
From the death of Adrian to the death of Marcus	
Aurelius	141
From the death of Aurelius to the death of Severus	147
From the death of Severus to the deaths of	
Macrinus and Balbienus	155
From the deaths of Maximus and Balbienus, to the	
death of Aurelian	162
From the death of Aurelian to the death of	
Carnius	172
From the death of Carnius to the death of Galerius	179
The reign of Constantine	
From the death of Constantine to the destruction	
of the Western Empire	195

17.

-

F .. 2 1-

ar V tri ar co La of onl

up kin ed thr de Sil ing bed the sho tha

e rus anti

1.1

64

72

82

89 95

f 104

• 0 113

of

. 13

. us 147

of

he

of

..

ion

n 122

131

141

155 . .

172 ..

188

195

.. 162

ius 179

CHAPTER I.

TROM THE ORIGIN OF THE ROMANS TO THE DEATH BOMULUS.

1. The Romans, desirous of being called the descendants of the gods, trace their origin to Eneas, the son of Venus and Anchises, who having escaped from the destruction of Troy, after many adventures and dangers, arrived in Italy, A. M. 2294. Latinus, the king of that country, received him kindly, and gave him his daughter Lavinia in marriage. Eneas built a city, which in honor of his wife he named Lavinium. Over this city he reigned only four years, when he was slain in battle.

2. The succession continued in the family of Eneas for upwards of four hundred years, during which time fifteen kings had reigned. Numitor, the fifteenth king was deposed by his brother Amulius. He, the better to secure the throne which he had usurved, murdered the sons of the deposed monarch, and caused his only daughter Rhea Silvia to become a vestal.

3. His precautions, however, proved vain. According to tradition, Rhea Silvia and Mars, the god of war, became the parents of two boys. Amulius condemned the mother to be buried alive, and ordered that the boys should be flung into the Tiber. It happened, however, that this cruel order was executed at a time when the

river had overflowed its banks, so that the cradle in which the boys were placed, after floating about for some time, was safely deposited on dry land. A wolf, descending from the mountains to drink, came at the cry of the infants, and fed and caressed them, as if she had been their mother, until Faustulus, the king's shepherd, finding the boys in this singular situation, took them home and brought them up as his own.

4. Romulus and Remus, the twiss, soon began to discover abilities and desires above the meanness of their supposed origin. Becoming weary of a shepherd's life, they betook themselves to the chase, and from hunting wild beasts, speedily turned their strength against the robbers that infested their country. In one of these excursions, the brothers were surprised and taken prisoners. Romulus escaped, but Remus was carried before the king.

C

b

ti

C

ti iz P c

5. About this time Faustulus, who had long suspected that the twins under his care were the same that had been exposed to death by Amulius, disclosed his suspicions to Romulus, who henceforth thought of nothing but the rescue of his brother, and the destruction of the tyrant. Through his means, Remus was soon set free, Amulius dethroned and slain, and Numitor, who had been deposed for forty years, replaced upon the throne.

6. The two brothers then determined to build a city on the spot where they had been exposed and preserved. Being unable to decide which should have the honor of governing the rising city, they were advised by Numitor to take an omen from the flight of birds, in order to ascertain the will of the gods. This omen, each interpreted in a manner favorable to himself. A quarrel arose between them, in which Remus was slain.

which time, ending the inn their ng the prought

to disof their d's life, hunting the robe excurrisoners. he king. uspected that had uspicions but the tyrant. Amulius deposed

d a city reserved. honor of Numitor to ascerpreted in between 7. Romulus now being left sole commander, laid the foundation of a city, which, in honor of the founder, was called Rome, A. M. 3252, B. C. 752. It was at first only a mile in circumference, and contained about a thousand houses. In order to increase the number of inhabitants, a sanctuary was opened for malefactors and slaves, and such as were desirous of change. These soon flocked to the city in great numbers, and in a short time they began to think of giving a form to their government. Romulus was chosen king, and in order to impress his subjects with an idea of his authority, it was agreed that wherever he went, he should be preceeded by twelve officers, called lictors, each armed with an axe, tied up in a bundle of rods.

8. The senate, who were to act as counsellors to the king, was composed of one hundred of the principal citizens of Rome. The patricians, or nobles, who formed a third part of the senate, assumed the power of authorizing those laws passed by the king and the senate. The plebeians, or common people, were to till the land, feed cattle, and follow trades, but were allowed to have no share in the government.

9. The number of inhabitants capable of bearing arms at this time, amounted to no more than three thousand foot, and as many hundred horse. These, Romulus divided into three tribes, to each of which he assigned a different quarter of the city. Each of these tribes was again subdivided into curiae, or companies, with a centurion to command it, a priest, called curio, to offer sacrifices, and two of the principal inhabitants, called duumviri, to distribute justice.

10. Through these judicious regulations, the city ra-

pidly increased in strength and numbers. In order to obtain wives for his people, Romulus sought alliance with the Sabines, then the most warlike nation in Italy. His proposals being rejected with disdain, Romulus caused a feast in honor of Neptune to be proclaimed throughout the neighboring villages, and while the Sabines, with their wives and daughters, were intent upon the spectacle of the games, which followed the sacrifices, a number of Roman youths, with drawn swords, rushed in among them, and seizing the youngest and most beautiful among the women, bore them off in triumph. In vain the parents remonstrated against this breach of hospitality. The virgins were detained, and became the wives of the Romans. A bloody war ensued, in which the Romans were victorious, but Romulus, instead of destroying the Sabine towns, placed Roman colonies in them.

11. Tatius, king of Curos, a Sabine city, was the last who sought to revenge the insult offered to his country. He having, by stratagem, obtained possession of the Capitoline hill, an engagement took pluce, which was renewed with about equal success for several days. On the fourth day, the Sabine women, who had been carried away by the Romans, regardless of their own danger, cast themselves between their husbands and fathers, and implored them to desist. The contending parties, as if by natural impulse, threw down their arms. An accommodation ensued, by which it was agreed that Romulus and Tatius should reign jointly in Rome, that one hundred Sabines should be added to the Senate, and that such of the Sabines as chose should be admitted to live in Rome, and enjoy all the privileges of citizens.

12. About five years after, the death of Tatius left

to obwith His used a ut the their of the Loman n. and romen, ostrats were bloody as, but placed

ie last ountry. of the h was s. On carried danger, rs, and es, as if accomomulus undred such of Rome,

tius left

Romulus once more sole monarch of Rome. Elated by the success which attended his arms in various quarters, he began to affect absolute sway. The senate displeased with his conduct, soon found means secretly to get rid of the tyrant, and persuaded the multitude that he had been taken up to heaven. Thus he whom they could not endure as a king, they were content to worship as a god. Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.

Questions on Chapter First.

- 1. To whom do the Romans trace their origin ? How did Latinus receive Encas ?
- 2. How long did the succession continue in the family of Eneas ? What of Numitor ? What of Anchises ?
- 3. Did his precautions avail ? To what did he condemn the mother and children ? Relate in what manner the boys were preserved ?
- 4. What of Romulus and Remus as they grew up ? What occurred in one of their excursions ?
- 5. What disclosure did Faustulus make ? What were the consequences ?
- 6. What did the brothers now resolve to do 3
- How were they to decide which should govern ? 7. When was the city of Rome founded ? How large was the city at first ? What means were taken to increase the number of inhabitants ? Who was chosen king ?
- 8. Of whom was the senate composed ? What is said of the patricians? What of the plebeians ?
- 9. What was at this time the number of inhabitants ? How did Romulus divide them ?
- 10. What means did Romulus take to obtain wives for the people ? How did the Sabines receive his proposals, and what were the consequences ?
- 11. Who was the last who sought to revenge the insult offered to his country? Describe the conduct of the S-bine women?
- 12. What of Romulus after the death of Tatius ? What of the senate ? How long did Romulus reign ?

CHAPTER II.

FROM THE DEATH OF ROMULUS, TO THE DEATH OF ANCUS MARTIUS, THE FOURTH KING OF ROME. YEAR OF ROME 38.

1. After the death of Romulus, the senate undertook to supply the place of the king by taking the government each of them in turn for five days. But the plebeians, seeing in this transfer of power only the multiplying of masters, at the end of a year insisted on a change, and the senate at length chose Numa Pompilius, a Sabine, as king. This choice gave universal satisfaction.

2. Numa was a learned, pious, and just man. His virtues peculiarly fitted him for the throne at a time when the government consisted of various petty states, but lately conquered, and by no means closely united to each other. Much of his time was spent in endeavoring to inspire his subjects with a love of piety and veneration for the gods. In his reign was built the temple of Janus, which was to be shut in time of peace, and open in time of war.

3. For the encouragement of agriculture, he divided the land which Romulus had gained in war among the poorer part of the people. He regulated the calendar, and destroyed the distinction between Romans and Sabines, by dividing the people according to their several trades, and compelling them to live together. He enjoyed a peaceful reign of forty-three years.

4. Tullus Hostilius, who succeeded Numa, was in all respects unlike his predecessor, being entirely devoted to war, and more fond of enterprise than even the founder of the empire. The Albans, by committing some depredations on the Roman territory, soon gave him an oppor-

tunity of indulging his favorite inclinations. The forces of the two states met about five miles from Rome. While the armies were awaiting the signal for the battle, the Alban general, stepping into the space between them, proposed to decide the dispute by single combat. To this proposition Tullus agreed.

5. There were in each army three twin brothers, all remarkable for their courage, strength, and activity, and to them it was resolved to commit the management of the combat. The Roman brothers were called Horatii and the Albans Curratii.

6. The champions met. Victory, which for a time appeared doubtful, at last seemed to decide against the Two of their champions lay dead on the field, Romans. and the third seemed by flight to beg for mercy. Defeat was however only apparent. It soon became evident that this flight of the surviving Roman was a pretence in order that, by separating his antagonists, he might have an opportunity of engaging them singly. Turning suddenly upon the foremost of the Curratii, he laid him dead at his feet. The second instantly shared his fate. F.1tigued and disabled by his wounds, the third slowly advanced to offer an easy victory. He was slain almost unresisting, while the conqueror exclaimed " Two have I already sacrificed to the manes of my brothers; a third will I offer up to my country."

7. Tullus Hostilius reigned thirty-two years. It is said by some that he was killed by lightning. Others, with more probability, assert that he died by treason. He was succeeded by Ancus Martius.

S. Ancus, who was the grandson of Numa, seemed to make that king the object of his imitation. He cultivated

ANCUS

dertook governplebeitiplying nge, and bine, as

a. His ne when at lately h other. spire his ne gods. a was to divided

ong the dar, and Sabines, trades, joyed a

as in all voted to founder depre-

the arts of peace, and endeavored to induce his subjects to turn their attention to agriculture.

9. The Latins, mistaking his love of peace for cowardice, began to make incursions upon his territory. Ancus conquered them, destroyed their cities, and removed their inhabitants to Rome. He was also successful in quelling several insurrections which took place among the neighbouring tribes.

10. He was, however, less celebrated for his victories abroad, than for his works at home. He raised temples, fortified the city, made a prison for malefactors, and built, at the mouth of the Tiber, a seaport called Ostia. He died after a reign of twenty-two years.

Questions on Chapter Second.

b

t k H

b S b

u

e

k

e

r

- 1. Who ruled after the death of Romulus. What is said of the plebeians ? Who was chosen king ?
- 2. What is said of Numa ? How was much of his time spent ? What temple was built in his reign ?
- 3. How did he encourage agriculture ? What else did he do ?
- 4. Who succeeded Numa, and what was his character ? What is said of the Albans ? Where did the armies meet ? What proposal was made by the Alban general ?
- 5. To whom was management of the combat committed ?.
- 6. Describe the combat ?
- 7. What of the Sabines during this reign ? How long did Tullus reign ? What is said of his death ? Who succeeded him ?
- 8. What is said of Ancus Martius ? What of the Latius ? What were the works of Ancus at Rome ? How long did he reign ?

ects ta

Ancus d their uelling neigh-

ctories emples, 1 built, . He

CHAPTER III.

FROM THE DEATH OF ANCUS MARTIUS TO THE BANISHMENT OF TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS, THE SEVENTH AND LAST KING OF ROME. FEAR OF ROME 130.

1. Lucius Tarquinius Priscus, a man of great wealth and influence, was appointed guardian of the sons of the late king. He was the son of a merchant of Corinth, and had come, with his wife Tanaquil, a noble lady of the city of Tarquinia, to reside in Rome.

2. After the death of Ancus, the government for a time devolved upon the senate. It was not long, however, before Tarquin, having succeeded in setting aside the children of the late king, found means, with the consent of the neople, to obtain the throne. Although he got the kingdom through intrigue, he yet governed with equity. He added one hundred members to the senate, which made them in all three hundred.

3. But his peaceful endeavors were soon interrupted by the inroads, first of the Latins, and afterwards of the Sabines. Tarquin, however, soon succeeded in subduing both nations, and took many Latin towns. In the peace which followed these successes, being resolved that his subjects should not grow corrupt through indolence, he undertook and perfected several public works for the city.

4. Not content with a kingdom, without having also the ensigns of royalty, Tarquin, in imitation of the Lydian kings, assumed a crown of gold, an ivory sceptre with an eagle at the top, and robes of purple. These splendors of royalty, together with his design of adopting his son-in-law Servius Tullius as his successor, excited the envy and in-

flamed the resentment of the sons of Ancus, and they ditermined to destroy him.

5. To effect their purpose, they hired two ruffians, who pretending that they came to seek justice at the hands of the king, with the blow of an axe struck him dead in his own palace. The lictors who waited upon the king seized the murderers and put them to death, but the sons of Ancus found safety in flight.

Thus died Tarquinius, being eighty years of age, after a reign of thirty-eight years.

6. In the tumult which followed the king's death, Tanaquil, his widow, desirous that her son-in-law Servius Tullius 'should succeed him, dissembled her sorrow, and from one of the windows of the palace assured the people that Tarquinius was not dead, that he would soon recover, and that in the meantime he had deputed his power to his son-in-law.

7. Servius Tullius, who was the son of a Latin bondwoman, therefore assumed the dignity, and performed the duties of the king, until he had secured a strong party among the nobles. The death of Tarquin being then publicly declared, Servius came to the throne, solely at the appointment of the senate, without attempting to gain the suffrages of the people.

8. Servius made a great change in the Roman constitution, by admitting the plebeians to a share in the civil government. He divided the Romans into classes and centuries, according to their wealth, and the amount of tuxes which they paid to the state. He also instituted another regulation, called a lustrum. By this, all the citizens were to assemble once in five years in complete armor on the Campus Martins, or Field of Mars, there to give account of their families and fortunes.

they di-

ans, who hands of ad in his ng seized of Ancus

ge, after

h, Tanans Tullius from one that Tar-, and that on-in-law. tin bondrmed the ong party eing then lely at the gain the

an constithe civil asses and mount of instituted ll the citicomplete s, there to

9. In order to secure the throne by every possible precaution, Servius had, at the beginning of his reign, married his two daughters to the two grandsons of Tarquin. He knew that his daughters, as well as their intended husbands, were of opposite dispositions, and he thought that by uniting those of contrary tempers, each would correct the failings of the other.

10. The event however proved otherwise. Lucius. the haughty son-in-law, soon grew displeased with the meekness of his consort, and placed his affections on his brother's wife, Tullia, who returned his passion with sympathetic ardour. By the murder of their respective consorts, they removed every obstacle to their union and were soon after married.

11. From the destruction of their consorts, they soon proceeded to conspiring that of the king. They began by raising factions against him, alleging his illegal title to the crown, which Lucius, as Tarquin's heir, claimed as his At length, when he thought the senate ripe for OWD. seconding his views, Lucius entered the senate house adorned with the ensigns of royalty, and placing himself on the throne, began to harangue the people on the obscurity of the king's origin, and the injustice of his title.

12. When Servius, who entered while he was speaking. offered to take his usual place, he was pushed by the usurper down the steps of the throne, and while feebly attempting to make his way back to the palace, he was killed by the adherents of Lucius, and his body flung as a public spectacle into the streets.

12. It is said that Tullia, in her impatience to DTHEC .her husband as king, on her way to the senate house ordered her chariot to be driven over the dead body a Sate E. father. 1964

S

naire do

Such was the end of Servius Tullius, a prince of emment justice and moderation, after a useful and prosperous reign of forty-two years.

14. Lucius Tarquinius, afterwards surnamed Superbus or the Proud, conscious that all good men looked upon his accession with detestation and horror, ordered all whom he suspected of having been attached to Servius to be put to death, and fearing the natural consequence of his tyranny, increased the guard around his throne. His chief policy seems to have been to keep the people employed either in wars or public works, by which means he diverted their attention from his unlawful manner of obtaining the throne.

15. In this he was not altogether successful. Some of the patricians, abandoning their homes, took refuge in Gabii, a city of Latium; and awaited a fit opportunity to drive the tyrant from the throne. But through the stratagem of Sextus, the king's son, whom his father had caused to counterfeit desertion, and seek refuge among them, they were at last reduced to submission.

16. The vices of this same Sextus brought ruin on his family. Having become possessed of a detestable passion for Lucretia, the wife of Collatinus, a noble Roman, he committed a fearful outrage on the honor of that virtuous lady. This led to the expulsion and downfall of his family. Lucretia, hating the light, and determined to sacrifice herself for the sin of another, sent for Spurius, her father, and her husband Collatinus, to come and be witnesses of the disgrace which had fallen on the family. They instantly obeyed her summons, when, after charging Sextus with the basest prefidy to her husband and injuryto herself, she drew a poniard from beneath her robe and plunging it in her bosom instantly expired.

of em-

uperbus ed upon l whom s to be e of his c. His ble emeans he r of ob-

Some of fuge in unity to he straher had among

ruin on able pas-Roman, of that downfall termined Spurius, e and be e family. charging nd injury. er robe 17. Struck with pity and indignation, Spurius and Collatinus gave vent to their grief, but Junius Brutus, who had accompanied them, drawing the poinard from Lucretia's wound and lifting it towards heaven, exclaimed, "Be witness ye gods, that from this moment I proclaim myself the avenger of the chaste Lucretia's cause; from this moment I profess myself the enemy of Tarquin and his wicked house," and giving the poniard to all who were present, he imposed upon them the same oath.

18. Junius Brutus was the son of Marcus Junius, who had been killed by Tarquin the Proud. He had received from his father an excellent education, and possessed strong sense and a natural love of virtue, but taking warning by the fate of his father and his eldest brother, he feigned himself an idiot in order to escape the malice of the tyrant. He only awaited an opportunity to avenge the wrongs of his family.

19. He caused the body of Lucretia to be exposed in the public forum, or market place, and inflamed the minds of the citizens by an account of the horrid transaction. By this means, he obtained a decree for the perpetual banishment of the tyrant Tarquin and his family. The army soon made a truce with him, and Brutus was hailed as the deliverer of his country.

Thus ended with Tarquin, after a continuance of two hundred and forty-five years, the regal state of Rome.

Questions on Chapter Third.

- 1. Who was Lucius Turquinius Priscus ?
- 2. Upon whom devolved the government after the death of Ancus ? . What did Tarquin succeed in doing, and how did he govern ?

- 3. What interrupted his peaceful endeavours ? What did Tarquin do in the peace which followed ?
- 4. What did Tarquin now assume 1
 - What was the consequence ?
- 5. How did the sons of Ancus effect their purpose ? What was the age of Tarquin, and how long did he reign ?
- 6. What did Tanaquil do, after her husband's death 1
- 7, Who was Servius Tullius, and what did he do ?
- 8. What change did Servius make in the Roman Constitution 1 What regulation did he also institute ?
- 9. What had Servius done in order to secure the throne ?
- 10. What of Lucius ? and Tullia ?
- 11. After the murder of their consorts, to what did they proceed ?
- 12. Relate the couduct of I acius in the senate ?
- 13. How was Servius slain ? What is said of Tullia ?
- 14. How did Lucius Tarquinius act, when he had obtained the throne ? What seemed to be his chief policy ?
- 15. What of the patricians ?
- 16. What of Sextus Tarquinius ?
- · Describe the death of Lucretia ?
- 17. What did Junius Brutus say ?
- 18. Who was Junius Brutus?
- How did he influence the minds of the citizens?
 What did he obtain ? How long had the regal state of Rome continued ?

CHAPTER IV.

THE COMMONWEALTH.

FROM THE BANISHMENT OF TARQUIN, TO THE ELECTION OF TRIBUNES.— YEAR OF ROME 245.

1. The regal power being overthrown in Rome, a republican form of government was instituted in its stead, but the senate assumed to themselves the greater part of the power. The people chose from among the senators two annual magistrates, called consuls, with power equal to the regal.

Junius Brutus and Collatinus, the husband of Lucretia, were the first consuls.

15

2. But the existence of the new republic was soon endangered. A party was formed of young men from the principal families of the state, who undertook to restore the monarchy. Among these were the sons of Brutus, and the Aquilii, the nephews of Collatinus. This conspiracy was however accidentally discovered by a slave, who had concealed himself in the room where the conspirators were assembled.

3. This discovery placed Brutus in circumstances of great trial, by rendering it necessary for him to sit in judgment on his own sons, accused of treason. But while the other judges present were unable to repress sentiments of pity, Brutus, unmoved by any motive but the public good, not only condemned his sons to death, but witnessed the execution of the sentence.

4. Tarquin's hopes of an insurrection in his favour being thus overset, he prevailed upon the Veians to assist him, and with a considerable force advanced towards Rome. At the borders of their territory, he was met by the Roman army, commanded by the consuls, Brutus and Collatinus. A bloody battle ensued, in which Brutus was slain. The slaughter on both sides was nearly equal, but the Romans remaining in possession of the field claimed the victory.

This battle was fought in the year of Rome 246.

5. Soon after this Tarquin prevailed upon Porsenna, one of the kings of Etruria, to espouse his cause. This prince, equally noted for his courage and conduct, marched with a numerous army to Rome, and-laid siege to the city. A furious attack was made upon the place. The consols opposed in vain, and were carried wounded from the field. The Romans, fleeing in consternation, were

ign 1

tion 1

oceed ?

ined the

f Rome

ome, a

s stead, part of enators equal to

icretia,

pursued by the enemy to the bridge, which led into the city.

6. When all seemed to be lost, Horatius Cocles opposed himself to the whole torrent of the enemy, and assisted only by two others, sustained the fury of the assault, till the bridge was broken down behind him. Then plunging into the Tiber, although encumbered with his armor, he swam back to his companions, by whom he was received in triumph.

The crossing of the Tiber, by Horatius, is thus described in the "Lays of Ancient Rome," by Macaulay, the well known modern author :

> Alone stood brave Horatius, But constant still in mind; Thrice thirty thousand foes before, And the broad flood behind.

• But he saw on Palatinus The white porch of his home; And he spake to the noble river

That rolls by the towers of Rome. " Oh Tiber ! father Tiber To whom the Romans pray,

A Roman's life, a Roman's arms, Take thou in charge this day !"

So he spoke and speaking sheathed The good sword at his side,

And with his harness on his back, Plunged headlong in the tide.

No sound of joy or sorrow Was heaved from either bank; But friends and foes in dumb surprise,

With parted lips, and straining eyes, Stood gazing where he sank;

And when above the surges They saw his crest appear,

All Rome sent forth a rapturous cry, And even the ranks of Tuscany

Could scarce forbear to cheer. But fiercely ran the current,

Swollen high by months of rain ; And fast his blood was flowing ; And he was sore in pain ;

e city. pposed ed only till the ng into e swam ived in

us deslay, the And heavy was his armor, And spent with changing blows; And oft they thought him sinking, But still sgain he rose.

Never, I ween, did swimmer, In such an evil case, Struggle through such a raging flood Safe to the landing place; But his limbs were borne up bravely By the brave heart within, And our good father Tiber, Bare bravely up his chin; And now he feels the bottom, Now on dry earth he stands, Now round him throng the fathers To press his gory hands; And now with shouts and clapping, And noise of weeping loud, He enters through the river gate, Borne by the joyous crowd.

7. Porsenna now determined to reduce the city by famine, and the sufferings of the inhabitants soon became intolerable. At this juncture, when all things seemed to threaten a speedy surrender, an act of fierce bravery again saved the city. Mutius, a youth of great courage, determined to kill Porsenna or die in the attempt, entered the enemy's camp in the disguise of an Etrurian peasent. He approached the spot where Porsenna, in company with a secretary, was paying his army. Mistaking the secretary for the king, he stabbed him to the heart.

8. On being apprehended, and brought into the presence of the king, Mutius calmly made known his country and his design. At the same time, thrusting his hand into the fire which burned on an altar before him, he bade them do their worst, saying, "A Roman knows not only how to act, but how to suffer; I am not the only one you have to fear! Three hundred Roman youths are conspired for your destruction, therefore prepare for their attempts." Por-

senna, amazed at such intrepedity, ordered him to be conducted back to Rome, and offered terms of peace to the besieged. These being honorable, were readily accepted by the Romans.

9. Tarquin, by means of his son-in-law Manlius, once more stirred up the Latins to espouse his interests, at a time when the plebeians were at variance with the senate, concerning the payment of their debts. The plebeians refused to go to war unless these were remitted on their return. The consuls finding their own authority insufficient, offered to the people to elect a temporary magistrate, who should have absolute power not only over all the orders of the state, but over the laws themselves.

10. In consequence of this, Lartius was appointed first dictator of Rome. Thus the people who could not endure the name of king, readily submitted to a magistrate possessed of much greater power. He could, of his own will, make peace or war, levy forces, lead them forth, disband them, and even dispense with existing laws at his pleasure.

Lartius, having concluded a year's truce with the enemy, at the end of six months laid down his dictatorship, with the reputation of having exercised his power with blameless lenity.

11. Although the plebeians had this time submitted to be led forth, they nevertheless determined to throw off the yoke. Their grievances still continuing unredressed, they forsook the city, and under the conduct of a plebeian named Sicinius Bellutus, retired to a mountain, hence called Mons Sacer, about three miles from Rome.

12. The senate, as well as the rest who remained, were greatly agitated by this event, and various opinions were entertained as to the course to be pursued. At length

to the ccepted

is, once sts, at a senate, lebeians on their insuffimagisover all 'es. ted first t endure ate posown will, , disband pleasure. with the atorship. wer with

mitted to throw off redressed, plebeian in, hence ne. ned, were ions were At length it was decided to send a measenger, entreating the people to return, promising at the same time an oblivion of all that had passed. This message not succeeding, ten commissioners were deputed to enter into a treaty with the people, and to make such offers as should induce them to return.

13. The dignity and popularity of the ambassadors ensured them a respectful reception, and a conference began. After this conference had continued for some time, Menenius Agrippa, one of the wisest and best of the senators, who had himself been a plebeian, addressed them with the fable of the belly and the members. This fable, the application of which is so obvious, had an instantaneous effect upon the people, and they all cried out that Menenius should lead them back to Rome.

14. From this course they were however withheld by Lucius Junius, who alleged that although the people ought gratefully to acknowledge the kind offers of the senate, it was necessary for the security of their rights that they should have certain officers created annually from among themselves, who should have power to give redress to such of them as might be injured, and to plead the cause of the community. To this the senate, being anxious to obtain peace on any terms, consented, and the officers called the tribunes of the people were elected.

15. The tribunes were at first five in number, but were afterwards increased to ten. They were elected annually by the people, and generally from among their own body. They at first had their seats near the doors of the senate house, when they were called in to examine every decree, annulling it by the word Veto "I forbid it", or confirming it, by signing the letter T, which gave it validity. All

things being thus adjusted, the people returned in triumph to Rome.

Questions on Chapter Fourth.

- .1. What form of government was next established in Rome? What officers did the people choose ? Who were the first consuls ?
- 2. How was the existence of the new republic endangered ? Who were among the conspirators ? How was the conspiracy discovered ?
- 3. What of Brutus and his sons ?
- 4. Upon whom did Tarquin next prevail to aid him? Who commanded the Roman army ?
- Who was slain in the battle ? Who were victorious ? 5. What king next assisted Tarquin ?
 - With what success ?
- . 6. What of Horatius Cocles ?
- 7. What did Porsenna next determine to do ? Who saved the city ?
 - 8. Decribe the conduct of Mutius on being apprehended ? What did Porsenna then do?
- 9. Who did Tarquin next stir up to help him ? What of the plebeians ? What magistrate was appointed ?
- 10. Who was the first dictator, and what was his power ? How long did he hold the dictatorship ?
- 11. What did the people dctermine to do ? Where did they go ?
- 12. What of the senate ? Did the message succeed ? 13. Who were then sent ? How were they received ? What of Menenias Agrippa ? What effect had his fable ?
- 14. What of Lucius Junius ? What of the senate ? What officers were elected ?
- 15. What is said of the tribuncs ?

CHAPTER V.

a

t

F

W b

tł

se fu

FROM THE ELECTION OF THE TRIBUNES TO THE APPOINTMENT OF THE DECEMVIRI .- YEAR OF BOME 260.

1. The cultivation of the land having been neglected during the separation, a famine was the consequence in-

triumph

n Rome 1 the first

langered ? conspiracy

8 ?

d ?

ointed **1**

OINTMENT

neglected quence inthe ensuing season. The people accused the senate of buying up the corn in order to indemnify themselves for the abolition of debts, by selling it to greater advantage. But the arrival of a fleet of ships from Sicily, laden with corn, revived their drooping spirits, and appeased them for a time.

2. But Coriolanus incurred their displeasure by insisting that the corn should not be distributed until the grievances of the senate were redressed. For this the tribunes summoned him before the people. Coriolanus defended himself with great eloquence, but in vain. Being unable to answer, to the satisfaction of the people, some of the charges brought against him, he was condemned to perpetual banishment.

3. Committing to the care of heaven his mother, his wife, and his children, he left the city without followers or fortune, and took refuge with Tullus Attius, a man of great power among the Volsci, who took him under his protection, and espoused his cause.

4. Under some slight pretence, the league which the Volsci had made with Rome was broken, and a war ensued. Tullus and Coriolanus being appointed generals by the Volsci, entered the Roman territories, laying waste all the lands which belonged to the plebeians, but leaving those of the senate untouched.

5. In the mean time the levies went slowly on at Rome. The consuls seemed little skilled in war, and were even afraid to meet a general whom they knew to be their superior in the field. Coriolanus, therefore, took their towns one after another, and finding himself unopposed in the field, he at length invested the city of Rome, fully resolved to besiege it.

6. Alarmed by the danger in which the city was placed, the senate and people unanimously agreed to send deputies to him, with proposals for his restoration, on condition that he would withdraw his army. Coriolanus received their proposals at the head of his principal officers, and with the sternness of a general who was to give the law, refused their offers. A second embassy was no more successful, and a third, consisting of the pontiffs, priests, and augurs, was also vain.

7. When the people saw them return unsuccessful, they began to give up the commonwealth as lost. Nothing was heard but anguish and lamentations; nothing seen but scenes of affright and distress. At length it was suggest-'ed that what could not be effected by the intercession of the senate, or the adjurations of the priests, might be accomplished by the tears of a wife, or the commands of a mother.

8. Veturia, knowing the inflexible disposition of her son, at first feared to undertake the embassy, but at length she consented, and left the city accompanied by the principal matrons of Rome. Volumnia, the wife of Coriolanus, and his two children went with her. Coriolanus, seeing the mournful train of females advancing, determined to refuse them also, and called his officers about him to witness his resolution.

9. But when he was told that his mother and his wife were among them, he instantly came down from his tribunal to embrace them. His mother, seeing him much moved, seconded her words by the more powerful eloquence of tears. His wife and children clung around him, entreating his protection and pity, while the females, her companions, added their lamentations, and deplored their own and

s placed, deputies tion that ved their and with r, refused accessful, d augurs,

uccessful, Nothing seen but suggestcession of might be amands of

on of her t at length y the prin-Coriolanus, seeing the d to refuse witness bis

nd his wife in his tribuuch moved, oquence of entreating ompanions, r own and their country's destruction. For some time the conflict between honor and inclination was strong in the breast of Coriolanus. At length, as if roused from a dream, he flew to raise his mother, who had fallen at his feet, crying out "Oh my mother! thou hast saved Rome, but thou hast lost thy son !"

10. He therefore gave orders to draw off the army, pretending to his officers that the city was too strong to be taken. Tullus, who had long envied Coriolanus, was not slow to aggravate the lenity shown to the Romans. Upon his return, Coriolanus is said to have been slain in an insurrection of the people, and then honorably interred, after a late and unavailing repentance.

11. The Agrarian law, for the equal division of the lands of the commonwealth among the people, was an object constantly pursued by them. This law the senate would not grant to the people, and after many delays and excuses, recourse was had to a dictator.

Quintus Cincinnatus, a man of elevated character and simple manners, who had long given up all views of ambition, and spent his time in cultivating a few fields, was chosen.

12. Cincinnatus resolved to side with neither party, but by a strict attention to the interests of his country, to secure the esteem of all. By threats and well timed submission, he prevailed on the people to put off the law for a time, and so conducted himself as to be a terror to the multitude when they refused to enlist, and their greatest encourager when their submission deserved it. Thus having restored peace to the state, he returned again, with renewed pleasure, to his little farm.

13. At this time, year of Rome 295, the Æqui and

Volsci, though always defeated, renewed their inroads upon the Roman territory. Minutius, one of the consuls, was sent to oppose them, but he being naturally timid, and more afraid of being defeated than desirous of gaining the victory, suffered himself to be driven into a defile between two mountains, from which there was no egress save through the ranks of the enemy.

14. Several knights, who found means to escape, brought intelligence of the situation of the army to Rome. Nothing could exceed the consternation of the people, and in this juncture all eyes were again turned to Cincinnatus. Upon him they once more prevailed to leave his beloved solitude, and assume the dictatorship.

n

h

k

W

C

u

0

p

T

p

15. Upon entering the city, he entreated all who were able, to repair at sunset to the Campus Martius, with arms and provision for five days. He then put himself at their head, and marching all night, surprised the enemy early in the morning. A fierce contest ensued. The Æqui, hemmed in on all sides, unable either longer to resist or to fly, soon begged for a cessation of arms. Cincinnatus gave them their lives, but obliged them, in token of servitude, to pass under the yoke, which was two spears set upward, and another laid across, in the form of a gallows, beneath which the vanquished were to march.

16. Their spoils he gave to his own soldiers, reserving none for himself, and permitting no share of them to the delivered army. Thus having rescued a Roman army from inevitable destruction, defeated a powerful enemy, taken and fortified their city, and, more surprising than all, having refused any share in the spoil, he resigned his dictatorship after having held it fourteen days.

oads upon nsuls, was , and more ne victory, ween two e through

to escape, to Rome. he people, to Cincino leave his

d all who npus Mar-He then all night, A fierce a all sides, egged for a their lives, s under the nother laid ch the van-

, reserving them to the oman army rful enemy, ing than all, ned his dic17. But the repose from foreign invasion did not lessen the tumults of the city. The clamor for the Agrarian law continued, and was greatly aggravated by Siccius Dentatus, a plebeian, called the Roman Achilles, a man advanced in years but of admirable person and military deportment, who came forward to enumerate his hardships and merits.

18. He recounted the battles he had fought, the years he had served, the offices he had held, the wounds he had received, the crowns, bracelets, chains, spears, which had been bestowed on him. But notwithstanding all his hardships and all his honors, he had been left to drag out a life of poverty and contempt, while others, who had done nothing to deserve them, were enjoying the lands his valor had won.

19. The people were thus excited to demand that the law should be passed, nor would they listen to the senators who were to speak, but drowned their voices with their cries. But when reason would not be heard, passion, as usual, succeeded, and the young patricians, rushing furiously into the throng, broke the ballotting box and dispersed the multitude who offered to oppose them.

For this they were afterwards fined by the tribunes. Their resolution, however, for the present prevented the passing of the Agrarian law.

Questions on Chapter Fifth.

- 1. What occurred during the next season ? Of what were the senators accused ? What raised the drooping spirits of the people ?
- 2. What did Coriolanus insist upon ? What were the consequences ?
- 3. With whom did Coriolanus find refuge ?

B

	In the mean time what was happening at Rome ?
	What did Coriolanus do ?
6.	What did the senate and people agree to do ?
	How did Coriolanus receive the several embassies ?
7.	What of the people ? What was at length suggested ?
8.	Of whom did the fourth embassy consist ?
	How did Coriolanus receive them ?
	Describe the interview ?
0.	What did he then order ?
	What of his death ?
1.	What was the Agrarian law ?
	Who was chosen dictator, and what was his character ?
2.	How did he resolve to act?
	How did he conduct himself? .
	How long was he dietator ?
3.	Who invaded the Roman territory at this time ?
	What of Minutius ?
4.	To whom did the eyes of the people turn ?
5.	What did Cincinnatus entreat the people to do ? What
	followed ?
	How did Cincinnatus treat the vanquished ?
6.	What of their spoils ?
	How long was he dictator ?
7.	How were the clamors for the Agrarian law aggravated ?
8.	What did Dentatus recount ?
9.	What did the people demand ?
	What of the young patricians ?
	What was the consequence of the act ?
	*
	CILLA DEDED VI
•	CHAPTER VI.
100	THE CREATION OF THE DECEMVIRI TO THE INVESTMENT
	OF VEIL-YEAR OF ROME 302.

t v

r e p st

g cl fo

in

de

w

co

1. The commonwealth of Rome had been for nearly sixty years fluctuating between the contending parties that composed it, and now citizens of every rank began to wish for a written body of laws, which being known, might prevent wrongs as well as punish them. It was therefore agreed to send amoassadors to the Greek cities in Italy, and to Athens, to bring from thence such laws as had been found most equitable and useful.

2. Three senators, Posthumus, Sulpicius, and Manlius. were therefore sent. During their absence, a fearful plague depopulated the city. At the close of the year they returned, bringing with them a body of laws, which being afterwards formed into ten tables, and two more being added, made the celebrated Laws of the Twelve Tables.

3. On the return of the ambassadors, the tribunes demanded that a body of men should be chosen to digest these laws into a proper form, and to give weight to their execution. After much debate, ten senators were appointed, with powers continuing for a year, equal to that of kings or consuls, from which there should be no appeal.

4. For a year the decemviri, as they were called, wrought with extreme application, but at its close refused to resign their power, pretending that some laws were still wanting to complete their design; and the senate readily permitted their continuance in office.

5. But they soon threw off the mask of moderation, and regardless of the opposition of senate or people, resolved to continue in their office. Conduct so tyranical produced discontents in the city, which in turn were as sure to produce further acts of tyranny. The tyrants were guarded not by lictors alone, but by a numerous class of clients, dependents, and even patricians, and none was found to strike a blow for freedom.

6. At this time the Æqui and Volsci renewed their incursions, and advanced within ten miles of Rome. The decemviri divided the army into three bodies, one of which was to remain with Appius in Rome, to keep the peace of the city, and the other two, commanded by his colleagues, were to be led against the enemy.

do ?

? .ed 3

cter ?

do ? What

avated ?

NVESTMENT

for nearly ling parties rank began eing known, m. It was Greek cities e such laws

7. In order to be revenged on their leaders for their former tyranny, the soldiers refused to fight, and abandoned the camp at the approach of the enemy. Never was victorious news received with greater triumph at Rome than were the tidings of this defeat. The people, blaming the generals for the treachery of the soldiers, demanded that they should be deposed; others cried out for a dictator.

S. Among the foremost of these, was the old tribune Dentatus, the Roman Achilles, and on him Appius determined to be revenged. He was therefore appointed legate, and placed at the head of the supplices sent from Rome to the army. The office of legate was held sacred among the Romans, as in it was united the authority of a general with the reverence due to the priesthood. The generals received him with every outward mark of respect, but soon found means to gratify their desire for revenge.

9. Dentatus having expressed disapprobation of the place of encampment, was sent at the head of a hundred men to search for a better. The soldiers, however, were hired assassins, who leading him into the hollow bosom of a mountain, attacked him from behind.

10. Dentatus, perceiving too late the treachery of the generals, determined to sell his life as dearly as possible. Though an old man, he still retained the valor of his youth. Setting his back against a rock, he defended himself until he had slain fifteen and wounded thirty of his enemies, nor did they overcome him, until ascending the rock against which he leaned, they threw down stones upon him. The old soldier fell beneath their united efforts, showing by his death that he owed to his fortitude and not to his fortune that he had come off so many times victorious.

for their l abandon-Never was at Rome e, blaming demanded a dictator. old tribune pius deterappointed s sent from held sacred thority of a lood. The c of respect, or revenge. tion of the f a hundred wever, were w bosom of

chery of the as possible. of his youth. himself until enemies, nor rock against him. The owing by his his fortune 11. But a transaction still more atrocious at last served to inspire the citizens with resolution to throw off the yoke.

Appius, struck with the exquisite beauty of Virginia, a young girl of fifteen, daughter of Virginius, a centurion, then absent with the army, and the betrothed wife of Icilius, formerly a tribune of the people, determined to find means to gratify his base passion. The law which he had enacted, forbidding the intermarriage of the patricians with the plebeians, would prevent his taking her as his wife; he therefore determined to make her his slave.

12. In one Claudius, long a minister to his crimes, he found a fit instrument for his purpose. He, acting according to the instructions of Appius, entered the public school where Virginia sat in the midst of her companions, and notwithstanding the resistance of the people, brought together by her cries, carried her before the tribunal of Appius. Here he asserted that Virginia was the daughter of one of his female slaves, who had sold her to the wife of Virginius, who had been childless, and demanded that as his property she should be restored.

13. Appius pretended to be struck with the justness of his claims, and was only prevented from giving her up to Clandius by the outcrics of the people and the resistance of her lover Icilius. He, therefore, thought proper to suspend his judgment, under pretence of awaiting the return of Virginius.

14. At the same time, he wrote letters to the generals commanding that Virginius should be detained in the camp. These letters were intercepted by the friends of Virginius, who informed him of the danger of his daughter. He, therefore, hastened to Rome, and next day appeared with Virginia before the tribunal of Appius. Notwith

standing the evident falsehood of his claims, Virginia was adjudged to be the slave of Clandius, and the lictors were commanded to disperse the multitude, and give her in possession to her master.

FTAWA

TAAAA

Sr So

So

A: In

Th

lov

ma

and

sol

M

COI

ing the

off

thi

wi

in

de

gr pe pl

to

15. Virginius, determined to save his child from a fate so fearful, pretended to acquiesce in the sentence, and calmly asked permission to bid her farewell. This being granted, he took the almost expiring Virginia in his arms, and while tenderly embracing her and kissing the tears from her cheeks, slowly drew her towards a butcher's stall, on the other side of the forum. There snatching up a knife, he plunged it into her heart, exclaiming "my dearest lost child, thus alone can I preserve your honor and your freedom." Then turning to Appius, "Tyrant," he cried, " by this blood I devote thy head to the infernal gods !"

The death of Virginia is thus powerfully described by Macaulay, in his "Lays of Ancient Rome." Straightway Virginius led the maid a little space aside, To where the reeking shambles stood, piled up with horn and hide, Close to yon low dark archway where, in a crimson flood, Lesps down to the great sewer the gargling stream of blood. Hard by, a flesher on a block had laid his whittle down, Virginius caught the whittle up, and hid it in his gown; And then his eyes grew very dim, and his throat began to swell And the hoarse changed voice he spake, "Farewell, sweet child ! farewell !

Oh how I loved my darling ! Though stern I sometimes be, To thee thou know'st I was not so. Who could be so to thee ? And how my darling loved me ! How glad was she to hear My footsteps on the threshold, when I came back last year !

The house that was the happiest within the Roman walls, The house that envied not the wealth of Capua's m arble halls, Now, for the brightness of thy smile, must have eternal gloom, And for the music of thy voice, the silence of the tomb; The time is come. See how he points his eager hand this way ! See how his eyes gloat on thy grief, like a kite's upon his prey; With all his wit, be little deems that spurned, betrayed, bereft, Thy father hath in his despair one fearful refuge left.

irginia lictors ve her

a fate ce, and s being s arms, he tears utcher's hatching claiming ve your Appius, head to

ribed by

and hide,

swell reet child !

be, thee 1 ear

halls,

is way la prey; bereft, He little deems, that in this hand I clutch what still can save Thy gentle youth from taunts and blows, the portion of the slave; Yes, and from nameless evil, that passeth taunt and blow— Foul outrage, which thou know'st not, which thou shalt never know; Then clasp me round the acck once more, and give me one more kiss, And now, mine own dear little girl, there is no way but this." With that he lifted high the steel, and smote her in the side; And in her blood she sank to earth, and with one sob she died !

Then for a little moment, all people held the'. breath ; And through the crowded forum was stillness as of death ; And in another moment, brake forth from one and all, A cry as if the Volscians were coming o'er the wall : Some with averted faces shricking fied home amain, Some ran to call a leech, and some ran to lift the slain, Some felt her lips, and little wrist, if life might there be found, And some tore up their garments fast, and strove to stanch the wound; In vain they ran, and felt, and stanched, for never truer blow That good right arm had dealt in fight against a Volscian foe !

16. Virginius then mounted his horse and returned, followed by many of his friends, to the army, to whom he made known the whole affair. Excited by his words, and prepared by former acts of tyranny for revolt, the soldiers left their generals, and took their station on Mount Aventine. Appius, in the meantime, did what he could to quell the tumult in the city, but the senate forseeing the miseries that threatened the state if they opposed the incensed army, despatched messengers to them, offering to restore the former mode of government. To this all the people joyfully agreed, and the army returned with triumph to the city.

Appius died by his own hand in prison.

17. These intestine struggles produced great weakness in the state. The virtues of the Romans seemed to degenerate in their contests. The tribunes of the people grew more turbulent. They proposed two laws, one permitting the intermarriage of the patricians and the plebeians; the other to permit the plebeians to be admitted to the consulship.

-

1

5

6,

7. 8. 9. 10.

11.

12. 13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

20.

720

had

its t

18. These proposals the senators received with indignation. Finding, however, that some concession was necessary, they consented to the law concerning marriage. By this the people were appeared for a short time only, and the Senators at last proposed that the consulship should be abolished, and that six or eight governors, half at least chosen from the people, should take the place of the consuls. These officers were called military tribunes, and their appointment gave great satisfaction to the people. They, however, only retained them about three months, when the consulship was restored.

19. At the same time the new office of censor was ereated. The censors were elected for five years. Their business was to estimate the number and estates of the people, and to distribute them into their proper classes, to inspect the lives of their fellow citizens, to degrade senators for misconduct, and to remove plebeians into a lower class, in case of misdemeanor.

20. The calm that succeeded the creation of these officers was of short duration. A famine having arisen, the consuls were accused of not having laid in a sufficient supply of corn. Mælius, a rich and ambitious knight, having bought up all the corn of Tuscany, distributed it among the people, till his house became the resort of all who wished to exchange a life of labor for one of lazy dependence. When he had obtained a sufficient number for his purpose, a conspiracy was formed, by which he was to secure command. This plot was however discovered, and Cincinnatus, now eighty years old, was appointed dictator. Mælius refusing the second time to appear when summoned to do so, was slain in the forum by Ahala, the master of the horse.

13

Questions on Chapter Sixth.

- 1. What did the citizens begin to wish ?
- What was it agreed to do ? 2. Who were sent ? What of the laws of the twelve tables ?
- 3. What did the tribunos demand ?
- Who were chosen 1
- 4. What of the decemviri ?
- 5. What did they then resolve to do ? By whom were they guarded ?
- 6. What of Æqui and Volsci ? How did the docemviri divide the army ?
- 7. How did the soldiers revenge the tyranny of their leaders 1
- 8. What is said of Dentatus ?
- 9. How did the generals gratify their wish for revenge ?
- 10. Describe the manner of Dentatus' death ?
- 11. What is said of Applus and Virginia ?
- 12. What did Claudius do ? What did he assert ? 13. How was Appius prevented from giving her up to Claudius ?
- 14. What did he do at the same time ? What of Virginius ? What was the decision of Appius ?
- 15. Describe the manner of Virginia's death ?
- 16. What did Virginius then do 1
- What of the soldiers ? What of the senate ? How did Appius die ?
- 17. What was the consequence of these struggles ? What did the tribunes demand ?
- How did the senators receive these proposals.
 What law was passed ? What did the senators at last propose ? How long did they continue ?
- 19. What officers were then chosen ? What was their business ?
- 20. How was the calm which succeeded broken ? What is said of Mælius 1

CHATER VII.

FROM THE INVESTMENT OF VEIL, TO THE BURNING OF ROME BY THE GAULS-YEAR OF ROME, 349.

1. The Veians had long been the rivals of Rome. They had taken the opportunity of intestine distresses to ravage its territories, and had even threatened with outrage the .

B2

th indigion was narriage. me only, onsulship nors, half place of tribunes. e people. e months,

asor was . Their tes of the classes, to ade senato a lower

these offirisen, the icient supht, having it among of all who zy depenber for his was to severed, and d dictator. summoned e master of

ambassadors who had been sent to complain of these injuries. It was therefore decreed that Veii should fall. So great was its strength, that it sustained a close siege of ten years, and was at last taken by stratagem.

t

p

h

T

n

tl

s

re

th

to

W

in

th

th

co

re

be

sa

in

th

ca

m de

1

th

in

st

pı fo

2. Various were the successes, and many were the commanders, that conducted the seige. At length Furius Camillus, a man who without intrigue or solicitation had raised himself to eminence in the state, was appointed dictator, and to him was committed the conduct of the war. Conscious that he was unable to take the city by storm, he with much labor, opened a passage underground, which led into the very heart of the citadel. By this means, the city was filled with his armed legions, to the amazement and consternation of thei nhabitants, who until that moment had rested in perfect security.

3. But the virtues of Camillus seemed little fitted to command the respect of the turbulent people at home. Being cited by the tribunes to answer the many charges brought against him, Camillus resolved not to await the ignominy of a trial, but bidding farewell to his wife and children, prepared to depart from Rome. When he reached the gates of the city, he could no longer suppress his indignation, but turning his face towards the capitol, and lifting up his eyes to heaven, he entreated all the gods that his countrymen might one day be sensible of their injustice and ingratitude.

4. The tribunes, who at first triumphed in his downfall, soon had reason to regret their injustice, and to wish for the assistance of one who was able to preserve their country from ruin; for a more terrible enemy than the Romans had yet encountered began to make their appearance.

hese injufall. So ege of ten

were the th Furius ation had inted dicf the war. storm, he ad, which neans, the mazement at moment

fitted to at home. y charges await the wife and When he r suppress he capitol, ed all the sensible of

his downnd to wish erve their y than the their ap5. The Gauls, a barbarous nation, had about two centuries before crossed the Alps, and settled in the northern part of Italy. A body of these, wild from their original habitations, were now investing Clusium, a city of Etruria. The inhabitants entreated the assistance, or at least the mediation, of the Romans.

6. Three young senators were sent as ambassadors to the Gauls, to dissuade them from their enterprise, and to show the injustice of their cause. Brennus, their leader, received them with great courtesy, and demanded to know the business of their embassy. They answered according to their instructions, that it was not usual in Italy to declare war without cause, and desired to know in what way the inhabitants had offended him. To this Brennus replied, that the rights of valiant men lay in their swords, and that the Romans had no right to the many cities they had conquered.

7. The ambassadors for a time dissembled their resentment at this haughty answer, but on entering the besieged city, they so far forgot their office as to head a sally of the citizens against the besiegers. Brennus, indignant at such conduct, sent a herald to complain to the senators, but failing to obtain redress, he broke up his camp, and marched towards Rome. A terrible engagement soon after took place, in which the Romans were defeated, with the loss of forty thousand men.

8. Rome, thus deprived of every succor, prepared for the last extremity. Some of the inhabitants took refuge in the neighbouring towns, while others determined to stay and perish with their city. The aged senators and priests, resolving, by the sacrifice of themselves, to atone for the sins of the people, habited in their robes of cere-

mony, seated themselves on their ivory chairs in the forum, to await the coming of the conquerors.

9. The Gauls spent two days feasting on the field of battle, and on the third advanced to Rome. Finding the gates open, Brennus at first feared-stratagem; but after due precaution, he entered the city and marched into the forum. The barbarians were for a time awed into reverence by the majestic gravity and venerable looks of the senators and priests, and mistaking them for the tutelar deities of the place, proceeded to render them a blind adoration.

1

t

k

I

t

ť

0 r

g w fi

> ti b

f

10. At length, one more daring than his fellows put forth his hand and touched the long flowing beard of Papyrius, an insult which the noble Roman punished by striking him to the earth. This was the signal for a general onset. Papyrius fell first; and all without distinction shared his fate. They pursued the slaughter three days, sparing neither age nor sex. Then they set fire to the city, and every house was soon burned to the ground.

11. The hopes of the Romans were now placed in the capitol. Brennus having first summoned it to surrender in vain, resolved to besiege it, in the hope that he might soon reduce it by famine; but the Romans, though suffering for want of food, threw bread into his camp, to assure him of the folly of such expectations.

12. At length, footsteps having been discovered leading up the rock, the taking of the citadal was attempted by a chosen band of Gauls, who with much difficulty succeeded in reaching the top. The sentinel was asleep, but the alarm was given by the gabbling of the sacred geese kept in the temple of Juno. Manlius, a patrician of great courage, was the first to mount the ramparts. By

e farum,

field of ding the out after into the red into looks of e tutelar a blind

lows put beard of hished by hal for a istinction ree days, the city,

ed in the surrender he might suffering ssure him

d leading pted by a ucceeded , but the ed geese rician of rts. By a single effort, he hurled two of the Gauls down the precipice. His companions coming to his assistance, the wall was speedily cleared of the enemy.

13. Brennus, discouraged by this failure, now only sought an opportunity to raise the siege with credit. At length he agreed to leave the Roman territories on receiving one thousand pounds weight of gold. But upon the gold being weighed, the Gauls fraudulently attempted to kick the beam, and when the Romans remonstrated, Brennus insultingly threw his sword into the scale, saying, the only portion of the conquered was to suffer.

14. While they were debating about the weighing of the gold, the Romans were informed that Camillus, their old general, was hastening with a large army to their relief. Presently that commander made his appearance, and demanding the contest of the uproar, ordered that the gold should be carried back to the capitol, saying " not with gold, but with iron, should the Romans purchase freedom." A battle ensued, in which the Gauls were defeated with great slaughter, and the Roman territories were soon cleared of the invaders.

15. The city being a heap of ruins, it was proposed by the tribunes to remove to Veii, where many of the inhabitants were already settled. This plan Camillus successfully opposed, and Rome soon began to rise from its ashes.

Camillus was styled a second Romulus, the first having founded, and he having restored the city.

Questions on Chapter Seventh.

- 1. What is said of the Veians ? What was resolved ?
- What is said of the strength of the city ? 2. Who took Veil, and in what manner ?

- 3. Did the virtues of Camillus command the respect of the people ? What did he resolve to do ? On reaching the gate what did Camillus say ?
- 4. What caused the tribuncs to regret their injustice to Camillus ?
- 5. What is said of the Gauls ?
 - What did the inhabitants of Clusium do ?
- 6. Who were sent ? how were they received ? What did Brennus reply ?
- 7. What did the ambassadors do ? What is said of Brennus ? Who were victorious in the battle which followed ? was the loss of the Romans ?
- 8. What is said of the iniabitants of Rome ?
- What did the senators and priests resolve to do ?
- 9. How were the barbarians affected by the appearance of the senators ?
- 10. What of one more daring than the rest ? What ensued ?
- 11. How did Brennus resolve to reduce the capitol ? What did the Romans do ?
- 12. What was attempted ? How did the Romans get the alarm ? What of Manlius ?
- 13. What did Brennus now seek ? What was agreed ?
- 14. What is said of Camillus ? 15. What did the tribunes propose ? Who opposed this plan ? What has Camillus been called ?

CHAPTER VIII.

FROM THE WARS WITH THE SAMNITES, TO THE FIRST PUNIC WAR .- YEAR OF R. 411 TO 488.

1. The Romans having reduced all their minor enemies, began to look for greater conquests. They turned their arms against the Samnites, the descendents of the Sabines, who inhabited the southern part of Italy.

2. The command of the army was given to Cornelius and Valerius, the last surnamed Corvus, from the strange circumstance of having been assisted by a crov, in a combat with a Gaul of gigantic stature.

3. The Samnites were the bravest enemy the Romans had yet encountered, and the contention between the nations was managed on both sides with the most determined resolution. But the fortune of the Romans prevailed, and the Samnites were at length defeated.

4. Soon after the close of this war, the army mutinied, and compelling Quintinus, an eminent old soldier, to be their leader, advanced to within six miles of Rome. The senate alarmed by the threatening aspect of affairs, created Valerius dictator, and sent him with an army to oppose them.

5. Valerius, knowing his influence with the army, instead of advancing to meet the mutineers in a hostile manner, went with the most cordial frankness to embrace and expostulate with his old freinds. This had the desired effect. The soldiers laid down their arms, with no other condition than that they should be pardoned for their mutiny.

6. A war between the Romans and the Latins followed soon after. As the arms, habits, and language of the contending nations were alike, a command was given, that in order to prevent confusion, none should leave the ranks, on pain of death. In the pause which preceeded the battle, Metius, general of the Latin cavalry, advancing from his lines, challenged any of the Roman knights to single combat.

7. For a time there was a pause, no soldier daring to disobey the order which had been given. At length, Titus Manlius, son of the Roman general, boldly advanced towards the Latin. A combat ensued, in which Titus slew the Latin, and then despoiled him of his armor, which he bore in triumph to his father's tent. His father, how-

people ?

What

e of the

What did

called ?

enemies, ned their Sabines,

Cornelius e strange n a comever, received him with a stern countenance, though with tears, and commanded him to be put to death, on account of his disobedience of orders.

S

th

Ci

hi

w

co

pr

en

to

ar

vi

m

tb

m

an

he

ot

le

riv

lo

th

A

va

an

of

on

th

cl

W

8. In the mean time, the battle raged with great fury, and it was for some time doubtful which side should gain the victory. The augurs had foretold that if any part of the army was distressed, the leader of that part should devote himself a sacrifice to the gods. The left wing of the army beginning to waver, Decius, the leader, determined to offer his life as an atonement to save the army. He, therefore, rushed furiously in among the enemy, striking terror and consternation wherever he came, till he fell covered with wounds. The Roman army considered this devotion as an assurance of success; nor was the superstition of the Latins less powerfully affected. A total route ensued, and scarcely a fourth part of the Latins escaped from the carnage.

9. But a signal disgrace, which the Romans sustained at this time in their contests with the Samnites, made a pause in their usual good fortune, and turned the scale in favor of the enemy. Pontius, the Samnite general, by the means of ten of his soldiers, disguised as shepherds, succeeded in beguling the Roman army into a narrow defile, between two mountains. Here, being surprised and surrounded by the Samnites, they were obliged to surrender. Pontius, after having stripped them of all but their lower garments, obliged them, to pass under the yoke. He then stimulated that they should leave the Samnite territories, and live upon the terms of their former confederacy.

10. The senate, however, indignant at their humiliating defeat, broke the treaty, and the war was renewed. The

h with ccount

t fury, d gain part of should ving of deterarmy. , siriktill be sidered as the ed. A Latins

nade a cale in ral, by berds, parrow prised ged to all but er the their

liating The Samnites soon bang reduced to extreme distress, sought the assistance of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus. He first sent Cineas, with a body of three thousand men, and followed himself, with an immense army, and twenty elephants, in. which the commanders of the time began to place great confidence.

11. In the mean time, the Romans had done all that prudence could suggest, to oppose so formidable an enemy; and the consul Levinus was sent with an army to intercept his progress. Pyrrhus, though his whole army had not arrived, drew up to receive them, but previously sent an ambassador, desiring to be permitted to mediate between the Romans and the Samnites. To this Lævinus replied, that he neither esteemed him as a mediator, nor feared him as an enemy; then leading the ambassador through the camp, he bade him observe what he saw, and report the result to his master.

12. The two armies pitched their tents in sight of each other, on opposite sides of the river Lyris. The Roman legions having advanced with much difficulty across the river, the engagement became general. The combat was long in suspense. The Romans had seven times repulsed the enemy, and were as often driven back themselves. At length, when success seemed doubtful, Pyrrhus advanced his elephants into the midst of the engagement, and turned the scale in his favor. A dreadful slaughter of the Romans ensued, fifteen thousand men being killed on the field, and eighteen hundred taken prisoners.

13. Nor were the conquerors in a much bette, state than the vanquished. Pyrrhus himself was heard to exelaim, that another such victory would ruin him. Not wishing to drive the Romans to extremities, he sent Cineas

na

Ro

Th

tha

rec

arm

des

WO.

ning

had

long

the

of fl

The

sed

behi

for

twe

was

fruit

Lea

Sam

year

prot

distr

who

tum.

cont

2

1

to negociate peace. But the Romans, with a haughtiness little expected from a vanquished enemy, insisted that before negociating for peace, Pyrrhus should leave Italy. Cineas, therefore, returned to his master, extolling both the virtues and the grandeur of the Romans.

14. The Romans soon recovered from their late defeat, and the two armies again met near the city of Asculum, pretty nearly equal in numbers. Here, again, after a long and obstinate contest, the Grecian discipline prevailed. The Romans were obliged to retire, leaving six thousand men dead on the field. 'The enemy had no cause to boast, as they had four thousand slain, and again Pyrrhus was 'heard to exclaim, "Another such victory, and I am undone."

15. The next season began with equal vigor on both sides. While the armies were at but a little distance from each other, Fabricius, the general of the Romans, received a letter from the physician of Pyrrhus, offering for a suitable reward to poison him, and thus put an end to the war.

16. Fabricius, indignant at the base proposal, immediately transmitted the letter to Pyrrhus, with the comment, that the king had been unfortunate in his choice of enemies and friends; that he trusted and promoted muzderers, while he directed his resentment against the generous and the brave.

17. Pyrrhus, struck with admiration of such magnanimity, exclaimed, "Admirable Fabricius ! It would be as easy to turn the sun from his course, as thee from the path of honor." Then having made proper inquiries among his servants, and discovered the treason, he ordered the physician to be executed. Not to be outdone in mag-

a haughnemy, inhus should his master, e Romans. ate defeat, Asculum, fter a long prevailed. x thousand e to boast, yrrhus was and I am

or on both stance from comans, reus, offering put an end

h the comhis choice moted mu:t the gener-

h magnanivould be as e from the r inquiries he ordered one in magnanimity, he ordered all the prisoners to be sent back to Rome, without ransom, and desired to negociate peace. This, however, the Romans refused on any other condition than had been formerly offered.

18. After an interval of two years, Pyrrhus having received supplies from home, advanced with a part of his army against the Romans, under Curius Dentatus. His design was to surprise them, but passing through a wood by night, his men lost their way, and in the morning he found himself within sight of the Roman camp. 19. A battle took place soon after. Pyrrhus, as before,

had recourse to his elephants, but the Romans were no longer terrified at them. Having found that fire was the most effectual means of repelling them, balls composed of flax and rosin were ignited, and driven against them. The elephants, maddened by the flames, and boldly opposed by the soldiers, rushed back, bearing down the ranks behind, and filling them with confusion. Pyrrhus was now, for the first time, utterly defeated. He not only lost twenty-eight thousand of his best soldiers, but his c.mp was also taken.

20. Thus finding all his attempts to subdue the Romans fruitless, Pyrrhus determined to give up the contest. Leaving a garrison in Tarentum, the chief city of the Samnites, he returned to Greece, after an absence of six years. The Tarentines soon found in the garrison left to protect them worse enemies than the Romans. In distress, they applied for assistance to the Carthaginians, who sent a fleet and blockaded the harbor of Tarentum, so that this unfortunate people now saw themselves contended for by three different armies, without the choice

of a conqueror. At length the Romans found means to bring over the garrison to their interest, after which they easily became master of the city.

PI

of

hun tuti in g arts 2 but ente afte the war call for 3 hav the and erti to I pow

cess part gini to r pend

Questions in Chapter Eighth.

1.	Against whom did the Romans now turn their arms ?	
2.	To whom was she command of the army given ?	
	What is said of the Samnites ?	
	Who were victorious ?	
4.	What mutiny occurred ?	
	Whom did the senate send against them?	
5.	How did Valerius succeed ?	
	What took place soon after ? What command was	riven ?
	What of Metius ?	
7.	What of Titus Manlius ?	
	What had the augurs foretold ?	
	Describe the conduct of Decius ?	
Ó.	What signal disgrace did the Romans sustain ?	
	How did Pontius treat the vanguished ?	
10.	What did the senate do ?	
+ 0.	To whom did the Samnites apply for aid ?	
11"	Who did the Romans send to oppose Pyrrhus ?	1
	What did Pyrrhus first do ?	
	What reply did Lævinus make?	
19	Describe the battle which followed ?	
	What was the state of the conquerors ?	
10.	Whom did Pyrrhus send to the Romans ?	-18 e.
	Was he successful ?	•
14	Who were defeated in the battle ?	
1.40	What was Pyrrhus heard to exclaim ?	•
15		
	What proposal was made to Fabricius ? - What did he do ?	-1,
10	How was Pyrrhus affected ? What did he do ? Who was the next Roman commander ?	~ .
Tó.		
	What was the design of Pyrrhus?	
90	Describe the battle ? What did Burnhus datarming to do ?	
40.	What did Pyrrhus determine to do ?	11 .
	To whom did the Tarentines next apply ?	

CHAPTER IX.

1. Carthage was a powerful city, on the northern coast of Africa, founded by a colony of Phœnicians more than a hundred years before the building of Rome. The constitution of the two states, resembled each other in form, but in general resources and in the commercial and lucrative arts, the Carthaginians were far in advance of the Romans.

2. Mutual jealousies had long existed between them, but the arrival of Pyrrhus in Italy had induced them to enter more closely into alliance with each other. Soon after his departure, however, the treaty was broken, and the war denominated the first Punic war, ensued. The wars between the Romans and the Carthaginians were called "Punic" from the term Pœni, applied by the former to the latter on account of their Phœnician origin.

3. The Mamertines, a people of Italian extraction, having attacked Messina, a city of Sicily, and murdered the inhabitants, the Sicilians determined to punish them, and besought the aid of the Carthaginians. The Mamertines, pleading their Italian origin, applied for assistance to Rome. This the Romans, jealous of the increasing power of the Carthagenians, determined to grant.

4. In the war which followed, the Romans were successful, and soon made themselves masters of the greater part of Sicily. But the naval superiority of the Carthaginians gave them a decided advantage, by enabling them to retain possession of the harbours, and through them to penetrate into the interior of the island.

5. The Romans, however, were determined to cope

ch they

given ?

with their enemies by sea, as well as by land, and preparations were made to build a fleet. A Carthaginian vessel, stranded on the coast, served as a model, and in less than sixty days from the time the timber was cut down, a fleet of one hundred and twenty galleys was in readiness to go against the enemy.

6. The command was given to the consul Duilius. He met the enemy near the Lipari isles, and in the battle that ensued was completely victorious. Fifty of the enemy's vessels fell into his hands.

7. Notwithstanding repeated triumphs, the Romans soon found that if their conquests in Sicily were to be retained, the power of the Carthaginians must be humbled at home. Accordingly Regulus and Manlius, with a fleet of three hundred sail, carrying fourteen thousand men, were sent to invade their dominions.

8. They met the Carthaginians with a fleet equally powerful, and with men more accustomed to the sea. While the fleet continued at a distance, the Carthaginians seemed successful, but when the Romans came to grapple with them, the difference between a mercenary army and one that fought for glory, soon became apparent. The resolution of the Romans was again crowned with success. The enemy's fleet was dispersed, and fifty-five of their vessels taken.

9. A descent was immediately made upon Africa. The city of Clupea was taken, and twenty thousand made prisoners. In a battle which took place soon after, the Carthaginians were defeated, and seventeen thousand of their best troops cut off. Eighty of their towns then submitted to the conquerors.

10. In this distress, the Carthaginians, destitute of

nat Xa one the an slau son 1 lost pal t built shore 500n 12 to ob that to ind which Rom that, broug 13 his ch seeme ered The

more

but w stropg

to reti

14.

vessel, ess than a, a fleet liness to

e battle of the

Romans ere to be humbled th a fleet and men,

t equally the sea. haginians o grapple army and nt. The h success. e of their

h Africa. and made after, the ousand of wns then

stitute of

native commanders, gave the command of the army to Xantippus, a Greek general of great experience. He at once saw the errors committed in the former actions with the Romans, and so skillfully disposed his army, that after an obstinate battle, the Romans were defeated with great slaughter, and their commander Regulus was taken prisoner.

11. Other disasters followed to the Romans. They lost their fleet in a storm, and Agrigentum, their principal town in Sicily, was taken by the Carthaginians. They built a new fleet, but the mariners, unacquainted with the shores of the Mediterranean, drove upon quicksands, and soon after the greater part perished in a storm.

12. The Carthaginians being thus successful, expected to obtain peace on their own terms. It was supposed that four years imprisonment would have been sufficient to induce Regulus to wish for a discontinuance of the war, which prolonged his captivity. He was, therefore, sent to Rome with the Carthaginian ambassadors, in the hope that, through his influence, his countrymen might be brought to negociate a peace on easy terms.

13. The event, however, proved that they had mistaken his character. In the heart of Regulus all private passions seemed to be extinguished, or at least they were overpowered by one great ruling affection, the love of country. The senate, weary of a war which had been protracted more than fourteen years, were desirous to obtain peace; but when it came to Regulus to express his opinion, he strongly advised the continuance of the war, and prepared to return a slave to Carthage.

14. Nothing could exceed the rage and disappointment

of the Carthaginians, when informed by their ambassadors that the counsel of Regulus had been for war. Some Roman historians assert that they revenged themselves by putting him to death, after long and cruel torture.

15. The war was now renewed with more than the former animosity on both sides. The Romans were again triumphant. Fabius Buteo once more showed them the way to naval victory, by defeating a large squadron of the enemy's ships. Lutatius Catulus gained a victory still more complete, by which the power of Carthage at sea was totally destroyed by the loss of one hundred and twenty vessels.

16. The Carthaginans thus reduced, were obliged to submit to the terms formerly proposed by Regulus. These were, that they should pay three thousand talents to defray the expenses of the war, that they should quit Sicily, that they should not make war with the allies of the Romans, and that all prisoners should be released without ransom. This treaty closed the first Punic war, which had lasted twenty-four years, and in some measure drained the resources of both nations.

Questions on Chapter Ninth.

for this Poe

and

2

first

trivi

of a

bor

- 1. What is said of Carthage and the Carthaginians ?
- 2. What is said of the mutual jealousies of the nations ? Why were the wars of the Romans and Carthaginians termed Punic wars ?

What of the Mamertines ?

4. Who were successful 1

- What is said of the naval superiority of the Carthaginians?
- 6. To whom was the command of the new fleet given ? What was his success ?

Some mselves auxe. than the are again them the on of the tory still ge at sea lred and

bliged to a. These alents to ould quit allies of released unic war, e measure

ians termed

ginians?

en ? What

7. What did the Romans soon and 1

- What force was sent against the Carthaginians ?
- 8. Describe the first battle ?
- 9. What immediately followed ? What was the success of the Romans ?
- 10. To whom did the Carthaginians entrust the command of their army 1
 - What was his success ?
- 11. What disasters followed to the Romans ?
- 12. Who was sent to negociate a peace?
- What is said of Regulus ?
- 13. What did the event prove ?
- What of the character of Regulus ?
- 14. What of the Carthaginians after his return ?
- 15. What is said of the war that followed ?
- 16. To what terms were the Carthaginians obliged to submit ? How long was the first Punic war ?

CHAPTER X.

FROM THE CLOSE OF THE FIRST, TO THE CLOSE OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR.-B C. 241 TO 201-YEAR OF ROME 513 TO 553.

1. In about six years after the close of the first Punic war the temple of Janus was shut for the first time since the reign of Numa. The Ron as now found time for the cultivation of the arts of peace. Laws date from this period having reference to manufactures and trade. Poetry and the fine arts advanced. Livius Andronicus and Nævius introduced some species of dramatic entertainment, and found a favorable reception from the people.

2. The wars which occurred between the close of the first and the opening of the second Punic war, were either trivial or of short duration. The Illyrians, being possessed of a considerable extent of seaboard, and convenient harbors, had for a long time carried on a piratical war with their neighbors. Several trading venets of Italy having

suffered from them, the Romans sent ambassadors to expostulate with Teuta, the queen, who governed the kingdom as guardian to her son. These expostulations being unheeded, and the ambassadors barbarously murdered, war was declared, and the Illyrians were soon subdued.

b

h

a

a

g

W

e

hi

th

ON

T,

22

W

ho

ha

if

da

pa

tha

wh

rea

to

Ti

ob

nik

be

an

10

3. Soon after this, the Gauls, taking advantage of the time when the Roman army was disbanded, entered Etruria, and wasting all the country with fire and sword, advanced to within three days journey of Rome. The fierce courage of the barbarians was, however, insufficient to withstand the disciplined valor of the Romans, and in a battle which soon took place, forty thousand of them were slain, and ten thousand taken prisoners. In a second battle, Marcellus slew their king Viridomarus with his own hand, and gained a complete victory over them. Thus their power was crushed, and the territories of the Romans greatly enlarged.

4. The Carthaginians had first made an entrance into Spain under pretence of supporting the colony of Gades, which like themselves was sprung from Tyre. Soon after followed the settlement of New Carthage. In order to prevent the increase of the Carthaginian power in Spain, the Romans had stipulated that they should not advance beyond the Iberus, and that the city of Saguntum should remain unmolested.

5. The Carthaginians, who had only sought peace because they were no longer able to continue the war, as soon as the strength of their army was renewed, determinned to free themselves from the restraints which had been imposed upon them. Saguntum was besieged and taken, after a resistance of eight months. This violation of the treaty, was the commencement of the second Punic war.

6. At the head of the Carthaginian army was Hannibal, one of the four sons of Hamilcar, of whom their father had said, he would rear them as so many lion's whelps against the Romans. In him were centered all the attributes of a great and successful general. He possessed great personal courage, strength, and fortitude. He was wise in council, and energetic in action, and no general ever possessed in a greater degree the power of attaching his soldiers to his person.

7. Believing that the most effectual way to humble the proud rivals of his country, was to attack them in their own dominions, he determined to carry the war into Italy. Leaving his brother Hanno with a sufficient force to guard his conquests in Spain, he prepared to cross the Alps with an army of fifty thousand foot, and nine thousand horse.

8. This undertaking, together with the conduct of it, has raised his reputation for enterprise and ability as high, if not higher, than any leader of armies whatever. The dangers and hardships encountered by his army in their passage over the Alps, may be inferred from the fact, that of the fifty thousand foot and nine thousand horse who commenced the journey, not one half survived to reach the plains of Italy.

9. In the meantime the Romans had despatched Scipio to oppose Hannibal. The armies met near the river Ticinus, and in the battle which ensued, the Romans were obliged to retreat. In order to enlarge his army, Hannibal commanded that the possessions of the Gauls should be safe from the depredations that followed this battle, and grateful for his kindness, this simple minded people flocked to his standard in great numbers.

ors to kingbeing dered, bdued. of the entered sword. The ifficient ind in a m were second vith his them. s of the

nce into Gades, Soon In order ower in ould not iguntum

t peace war, as sterminad been d taken, n of the nic war.

10. A second battle was fought on the banks of the Trebia. Hannibal, taking advantage of the well known impetuosity of the Romans, sent over at first a detachment of one thousand horse. These pretending defeat, hastily recrossed the river, followed by the main body of the Romans. By this means the defeat of the Romans was insured. Benumbed with wading up to their armpits in water, they became an easy prey to their enemies. Twenty-six thousand were either slain, or drowned in attempting to cross the river.

C

e

W

th

th

m

de

co

for

Va

Æ

Sal

bat

kni

thr

on

nib

11. Another defeat was sustained by the Romans near lake Thrasymene. On a circular range of hills, near the lake, Hannibal disposed his army, and Flaminius, the Roman general, took his station in the valley beneath. A mist rising from the lake completely concealed the Carthaginians from the Romans, while it left the view of the former unimpeded. The fortune of the day was such as might have been expected. Fifteen thousand soldiers fell with Flaminius in the valley, and six thousand more were obliged to surrender themselves prisoners of war.

12. Upon the news of this defeat, the senate was filled with consternation, and a dictator, Fabius Maximus, was appointed. It was his policy not to risk a battle with the Carthaginians, but from a distance to harass them, by straitening their quarters, and cutting off their supplies. These judicious measures he continued for some time, till at last the senate, accusing him of weakness and irresolution, appointed Minutius to equal power with him, and the army was divided between them.

13. By artful management Hannibal soon brought the troops of Minutius to an engagement, and they would have been cut off to a man, had not Fabius, sacrificing

his resentment to the public good, come with his army to their rescue. By their united efforts, Hannibal was repulsed, and Minutius, conscious of his rashness, resigned his power into the hands of the dictator.

14. At the expiration of his year of office, Fabius resigned the dictatorship, and Tarentius Varro, a man sprung from the dregs of the people, with nothing but riches and confidence to recommend him, was chosen to command. With him was joined Æmilius Paulus, a man experienced in the field, cautious in action, and impressed with a thorough contempt for his plebeian colleague.

15. Hannibal had encamped his army on a plain near the village of Cannæ. The Roman generals divided their army into two parts, each agreeing to take the command every alternate day. On a day when the command devolved upon Varro, he, without the concurrence of his colleague, crossed the river Aufidus, and gave the signal for battle.

16. Once more the Romans were utterly defeated. Varro escaped from the slaughter with great difficulty. Æmilius, scorning to seek safety by flight, perished, Sphing in the midst of hundreds of his foes. In this battle the Romans lost fifty thousand men, and so many knights, that Hannibal is said to have sent to Carthage three bushels of gold rings, which those of this order wore on their figgers.

17. When the first consternation caused by this blow had subsided, Fabius, styled the shield, and Marcellus, the sword of Rome, were appointed to lead the army. Hannibal offered peace, but it was refused, except on one condition, that he should quit Italy

18. Hannibel finding it impossible to advance to Rome,

f the WO nent. stily f the Was. its in mies. ed in near r the , the eath. d the ew of such Idiers more WRT. filled , was with m, by plies. e, till -solud the

nt the vould ficing

ge

th

wi

shi

su

re

25

m

Ma

pr de

he

the

an fill

mi

at

the

ne

pa th

he an

bo

at

th

or willing to give his army rest after a victory so splendid, led them to Capua, where he resolved to winter. Here a new scene of pleasure opened to his barbarous troops. They at once gave themselves up to intoxication, and from being hardy veterans, became infirm rioters.

19. From this time the fortunes of Hannibal began to decline. Still for many years he fought with varied success his opponent, Marcellus. At one time, he advanced within a few miles of Rome, but being entirely destitute of the resources necessary to carry on a siege, he was obliged to retire.

20. All his applications to the senate of Carthage for assistance, were in vain. He had prevailed upon his brother Asdrubal to attempt the passage of the Alps, with his army, but this the energetic opposition of the two elder Scipios prevented, and finally the death of Asdrubal put an end to all hope of aid from that quarter.

21. In the meantime the Romans, under Marcellus, had taken the city of Syracuse, in Sicily, and Scipio Africanus, the younger, had entirely reduced the Carthaginian power in Spain. As a general, Scipio was in all respects equal to Hannibal; as a man, his superior. As a warrior, he obtained many splendid victories, yet he subdued more by his generosity, mildness, and his benevolent disposition, than by the force of arms.

22. During his command in Spain, a circumstance occurred which has contributed more to the fame and glory of Scipio than all his military exploits. Among the captives taken at the capture of New Carthage, was a lady of extraordinary beauty, by whose charms the heart of Scipio was greatly affected. Understanding, however, that she was be rothed to a Celtiberian prince, named Allucius, he

endid, Here coops. , and

an to varied dvanstitute e was

ge for on his Alps, of the of Aster. cellus, Afriaginian espects arrior, d more psition,

glory captilady of Scipio hat she cius, he generously resolved to conquer his rising passion. He, therefore, sent for the lover, and bestowed her upon him, without any other recompense than requesting his friendship for the republic. Her parents had brought a large sum of money for her ransom. This Scipio generously refused to accept for himself, but bestowed it on Allucius, as a portion for his bride.

23. After his return to Rome, Scipio, believing that the most effectual means to withdraw Hannibal from Italy was to invade Africa, sought to carry the war thither. After many delays, and much opposition, he was appointed procensul of Africa, and with a large army took his departure for Corthage.

24. On his arrival, he was opposed by Hanno, whom he defeated and slew. An army of the Numidian allies of the Carthaginians was also defeated, forty thousand slain, and six thousand taken prisoners. The Carthaginians, filled with consternation at their repeated defeats, determined to recall Hannibal, to take the command of the army at home. Knowing that at his departure the power of the Carthaginians in Italy would be at an end, Hannibal obeyed with reluctance and regret.

25. On his arrival in Africa, he at first attempted negociation with Scipio, but this failing, both armies prepared for battle. Hannibal endeavored in vain to retrieve the failing fortunes of his country. In the battle of Zaina he was utterly defeated, and having done all that a great and undaunted general could do, he escaped with a small body of horse to Adrumetum.

26. This victory brought a peace. The Carthaginiar, at Hannibal's advice, submitted to the conditions which the Romans dictated, not as rivals, but as sovereigns.

20

21

23 24

26

F.R.

pri the the Ph

and

res

the Ro

sen

fac

tak

upc Ró

By this treaty the Carthaginians were obliged to quit Spain, and all the islands in the Mediterranean. They were bound to pay ten thousand talents in fifty years, to give hostages for the delivery of their ships and elephants, and not to make war in Africa, but by the permission of the Romans. Thus ended the second Punic war, seventeen years after its commencement.

Questions on Chapter Tenth.

For	what did the Roma	ans now find tir	me 7		
2. Wh	at is said of the w	ars which occur	rred 1		
Wh	at of the Illyrians	1		,	¥.,
	cribe the contests		1	•'	1
	ler what pretences			ed Spain 1	2
	at had the Roman		-		
	at is said of the C		1	·e ⁶ · 20	
	at commenced the		war?	4	
	o was at the head			A	*
	cribe the character			1. 12.13	1
	at did he determin				
	at did he prepare t				
2. Wh	at is said of this un	dertakine ?		· · · · ·	Sheet
Wh	at of its dangers as	nd hardshins ?		*K. 18/2	1
9. Wh	at of the Komans	Where did t	he armies meet	7	
	at means did Han				
arm			/	1989	
	ribe the second be	ttle 1		5 mg 4 4 5 4	
	were the Roman		1 60	the my	
	r this defeat, who			IPA	1
Wh	t was his policy ?	What did the	senate do't	1 N.X. 04 2.3.	
	t is said of Minut			Printy . 4	E ugle
	n Fabius resigned			and T	
	t is said of them "		1	ALL LEVELAN	f
	re had Hannibal e		my ?	1: E .	
	had the Roman G			What	1
	of Varro ?	e*.		R - Ag	5
	were defeated 1	What is said o	E Æmilies ?	stree of a	14
				日本 いち ふう 御屋	10

1. What is said of the temple of Janus ?

What was the loss of the Romans?

- 17. Who were next appointed to lead the Romans 1 18. Where did Hannibal winter ? What was the consequence 1
- 19. What is said of Hannibal for many years 7

Why did he not besiege Rome ?

bet

, to

nts. n of

70m-

12:31 (e

2.86.1

36 武章山

13

20. Did he obtain assistance ? What is said of his brother Andrabal 1

21. What of the Romans in the meantime 1 What was the character of Scipio ?

22. Relate what occurred during his command in Spain. 23. What did Scipio believe? What appointment did he receive ?

24. Who opposed him ? What was his success ? What did the Carthaginians determine ?

What is said of Hannibal ?

20. What did he first try ? What is said of the battle of Zama ?

26. What were the terms of the treaty dictated by the Romans ? How long had the war lasted 1

CHAPTER XI.

FROM THE END OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR, TO THE END THE SEDITION OF THE GRACCHI.-B. C. 201 TO 121-YEAR OF ROME 553 TO 633.

1. The treaty with Carthage, while it terminated the principal war in which the Romans were engaged, left them at leisure to pursue a variety of guarrels still on their hands, rather than bestowed peace. They defeated Philip, king of Macedon, in his attempts to subdue Athens, and greatly added to their reputation for generosity by restoring the liberties of Greece.

2. Antiochus the great, king of Syria, who had been the ally of Philip, was next made to submit to the Roman arms, and to accept of terms dictated by the senate.

3. Hannibal, on account of the jealousies of contending factions, had been obliged to leave Carthage, and had taken refuge with Antiochus. One of the terms insisted upon by the senate, was that this inveterate enemy of Rome should be delivered up to them.

8

incu

Ro

tres

by t

the

Dea

mili

1 8

thes

Car

to.t

wre

The

ted

orna

For

but

1

nus.

hors

tool

to

hum

mod

of ti

mor

cess

corr

man and

1

1

4. Certain that he had nothing to expect from Antiochus, Hannibal left his court, and after having wandered about for a time, took refuge with Prusias, king of Bythinia. Thither the Romans, with vindictiveness altogether unworthy of them, sent to demand him.

5. Hannibal knew that rather than incur the displeasure of the Romans, Prusias would deliver him up, and weary of being hunted from place to place, he determined to die. Entreating one of his attendants to bring him poison, he said, "Let us now relieve the Romans of their fears, by closing the existence of a feeble old man," —and drinking it, he expired as he had lived, with intrepid bravery.

6. In the same year died Scipio, the illustrious rival of Hannibal, and like him an example of the changeableness of fortune. Disdaining to reply to the charges brought against him by the people, of having appropriated to himself some of the treasure obtained in the war with Antiochus, and disgusted with the ingratitude of his countrymen, he went into voluntary exile. He died in Liturnum, in Campania, and at his own request was buried there, that his ungrateful country might not even possess his ashes.

7. The expediency of a war with Carthage, had long been a matter of debate in the Roman Senate. Among the deputies sent to Carthage, to obtain the information necessary to decide this question, was the celebrated Cato, the censor. Whatever may have been his virtues, he seems to have cherished an implacable hatred to the hereditary foes of his country, for after his return every speech of his, on whatever subject, ended with the memorable sentence " Carthage *must* be destroyed."

59

8. The Carthaginians having taken up arms to repel incursions of the Numidians upon their territories, the Romans pretended to look upon this as a violation of the treaty, and war was declared. Weakened and discouraged by the repeated defeats they had suffered in the war with the Numidians, the Carthaginians were desirous to obtain peace on any terms, and delivered up their arms and military stores to the Romans.

9. There was but one condition, however, on which these haughty enemies would grant a peace. It was, that Carthage should be deserted by its inhabitants, and razed to the ground; nor could the tears and entreaties of this wretched people change their resolution.

10. Despair for a time gave courage for resistance. The gold and silver vessels of their luxury were converted into weapons of war. Their women parted with their ornaments, and even cut off their hair for bowstrings. For a time they were successful in repelling the enemy, but the doom of Carthage was sealed.

11. Scipio Æmilius, the adopted son of Scipio Africanus, aided by Pharnes, the master of the Carthaginian horse, who had deserted his country in its hour of need, took possession of the city, and in a few days it was levelled to the ground. Thus Carthage, the only place where human genius seemed greatly distinguished in Africa, the model of magnificence, the repository of wealth, and one of the most powerful states of the ancient world, was no more.

12. But the enlargement of their territory, and the success of their arms abroad, were the sources of a ruinous corruption at home. The offices of state, and the command of armies, had become lucrative, as well as honorable, and were now coveted on the former account.

tioered By-

and ined him s of an," itrerious nge-

rges

ated

with

ounitur-

iried

ssess

long nong ation Cato, s, he hervery emo-

1

-

th

pi

21

es

01

ag

th

H

his

stu

pa

tal

pe

ter

UD

17 .

spe

pre

No

wa

11.20

cal

the

Wal

He

pro

citi

had

into

13. Although the mimorities of patrician and plebeian had long been extinguished by an equal participation in public bonors, yot the higher classes, under the titles of noble or illustrious, held a power as real, if not as invidious, as ever. They had availed themselves of the advantages of their station to accumulate wealth, as well as honor, and the greater part of the land of the republic had passed into their hands.

14. At this juncture appeared Tiberius Graechus. He was of plebeian origin, but enobled by the honors of his father. He commenced his career as a soldier at the usual age, and had served with honor under his brotherin-law Scipio, at the siege of Carthage, and also under Mancinus in Spain.

15. The Senate, refusing to sanction a humiliating treaty made by Manciaus and Tiberius Gracchus with the inhabitants of Numantia, a city in Spain, ordered them to be delivered up to the enemy, in order that in their own persons they might suffer for the failure of the engagement they could not fulfil. Gracchus appealed to the people, and was saved by their favor, and from that time he espoused their cause against the great.

16. He attempted the revival of the Licinian haw, which declared that no Roman citizen should possess more than five hundred acres of land. In his first attempt, he failed, but the death of Attalus, king of Pergamus, who had made the Romans his heirs, furnished him with an opportunity of gratifying the people at the expense of the great.

17. He procured an act to distribute the money found in the treasuries of Pergamus among the poorer citizens, the better to enable them to cultivate and stock the lands

which were about to be given to them. The senate alarmed at this, and other attempts made to circumscribe their power, prepared to resist. In a tumult which took place at the election of tribunes, Gracchus was killed, and the senate executed signal vengeance on all who had espoused his cause.

18. But their troubles with the Gracchi were not yet over. Caius Gracchus was about twenty-one years of age at the time of his brother's death, and for a time after that catastrophe he seemed to wish to shue public estice. He was, however, preparing to follow in the footsteps of his brother. His retirement was spent in pursuing such studies as would enable him by his eloquence its eway popular assemblies. His spirit was more ardent, and his talents of a higher order, than those of Tiberius, and the people conceived hopes that they would have their pretensions renewed, and more successfully conducted, than under their former leader.

19. Nor were they disappointed. After some time spent with the army in Sardinia, Gracchus returned, and presented himself as candidate for the office of tribune. Notwithstanding the violent opposition of the senate, he was elected.

20. Through his influence many popular laws were enacted. He procured an edict granting the freedom of the city, first to the inhabitants of Latium, and afterwards to all the people on the hither side of the Alps. He also fixed the price of corn at a moderate rate, and procured a monthly distribution of it among the poorer citizens. Through his means, much of the business that had hitherto been transacted by the senate now passed into the hands of popular assemblies.

pian a in a of ridiran-U as had

thes. the ber-

ting

with them their 'end-to thet baw, whe nian f the stress ound

ceas.

node

in

M

fle

sei

fro

the

sed

cha

wis

the

of t

mo

nar

pro

hav

con

to a

libe

the

1.

2

3.

7.

8.

21. By these means, Gracchus rendered himself obnoxious to the senate, and he was soon to prove how faithless a support is the favor of the populace. Their confidence in him was gradually withdrawn, and placed in one Drusus, a man insiduously set up by the senate to oppose him. In vain he revived the Licinian law in their favor. On presenting himself a third time as a candidate for the office of tribune, he was rejected.

22. Opimius, the consul, lost no opportunity to provoke and insult him. Gracchus had procured the enacting of a law, by which Carthage—though doomed by Scipio to lie for ever waste—should become the seat of a Roman colony: On some frivolous pretence, it was proposed that this law should be repealed. This repeal was strenuously opposed by Gracchus and his friend Fulvius Flaccus.

23. On the day when the votes to decide the question were to be taken, a tumult arose, in consequence of an insult offered to Gracchus by one of the lictors of the consul Opimius. The offending lictor was instantly killed by the friends of Gracchus.

24. The senate and their party, having possession of the capitol and forum, Gracchus and his friends took their station on Mount Aventine, which overlooked both. They refused to appear, when cited to answer before the tribunal of the Roman people, but sent a young son of Fulvius, to name to the consul the terms on which they would surrender themselves.

25. They were told in reply, that they must answer at the bar, as criminals, and not pretend to negociate with the republic as equals. At the same time a proclamation was issued, granting pardon to all who would leave Gracchus immediately.

26. This had the desired chect. The people left him in great numbers, and Opimius, leading his forces to Mount Aventine, a terrible slaughter ensued. Gracchus fled, and died either by his own hand or that of a faithful servant, who had promised to save him in his extremity from falling into the hands of his enemies.

e

e

٢.

e

ce

of

to

an

ed

in-

ius

on

an

the

led

of ook oth.

the

of

hey

- at

the

vas

hus

27. The persevering opposition of Caius Gracchus to the senate has generally brought upon him the charge of sedition. But this august body was in all respects greatly changed since the time when superior excellence and wisdom were necessary in order to obtain a seat among They were only to be distinguished from the rest them. of the people by their superior luxuries, and ruled the commonwealth by an authority gained from riches and mercenary dependants. The tribunes, who were formerly counted protectors of the people, becoming rich themselves, and having no longer opposite interests from those of the senate. concurred in their oppressions, while the people, reduced to a degree of hopeless subjection, instead of seeking for liberty, sought only for a leader to take their part against the tyrants.

Questions on Chapter Eleventh.

- 1. What had the treaty of Carthage done ? What is said of Philip of Macedon ?
- 2. What of Antiochus ?
- 3. What is said of Hannibal ?
- What was one of the terms of the treaty? 4. To whom did Hannibal next go ?
- 5. Describe his death ?
- 6. What is said of Scipio ?
- 7. What is said of a war with Carthage ? What of Cato ?
- 8. On what pretence did the Romans declare war 1

How did the Carthaginians prove that they desired peace 1. 9. Upon what condition would the Romans grant peace ? 10. How did the Carthaginians prepare to resist ? 11. What is said of Scipio ? What of Carthage 12. What was the consequence of their success upon the Roma at hon e ? 13. What is said of the animosities of the patrician and plebelan ? What of the lands of the republic 1 14. Whit of Tiberius Gracchus ? 15. What had the senate refused ? To whom did Gracchus appeal ? 16. What did he attempt ? What of Attalus ? 17. What act did Gracchus procure ? What is said of the senate ? What of the death of Tiberius Gracchus ? 18. What is said of Caius Gracchus ? 19. What office did he obtain ? 20. What laws were enacted through his influence ? 21. What is said of the senate ? What of the populace ? 22. What is said of Opimius ? What of the colony destined to Carthage ? 23. What occurred when the votes were to be taken. 24. Who occupied the capitol and forum ? Where did Gracchus and his friend take their station ? Who did they send to the senate ? 25. What were they told in reply ? What proclamation was issued ? 26. What followed ? What is said of the death of Gracchus ? 27. Of what has Caius Gracchus been accused by historians ? What is said of the senate ? What of the tribunes ? What of the people ?

CHAPTER XII.

1. Notwithstanding the corruption and disquietude which existed at home, the power and consequence of the Romans abroad continued to increase. They had succesfully opposed the Gauls beyond the Alps, and by planting colonies in different places among them, manifested as disposition to retain their conquests.

con cips his i 3 post bou dom He the Ron 4 Ron ence these dom COUS supei 5. king fied. to m he bo obtai 6. aghin Cess bappi Mete throu

7.

atte

1.

10.01

an ?

.

2

GOF

tude .

the

SUC- 1.

lan-

ed at

2. But of all the foreign affairs which occupied the attention of the Romans, the most memorable was the contest of the pretenders to the crown of Numidia. Micipsa, the king, had equally divided his kingdom between his two sons and his nephew Jugurtha.

3. The latter had served under Scipio in Spain; was possessed of considerable military skill, great bravery, and bound'ess ambition. Not content with a third of the kingdom, he soon determined to possess himself of the whole. He murdered Hiempsal, the elder brother, but Adherbal, the younger, escaped, and claimed the protection of the Romans.

4. Jugurtha, knowing how much the virtue of the Romans had declined, determined to try the influence of magnificent presents upon the senate. By these means, they were induced to declare that the kingdom of Numidia should be equally divided between the cousins, and ten commissioners were sent from Rome to superintend the division.

5. Although the richest and most populous parts of the kingdom fell to the part of Jugurtha, he was still unsatisfied. In order to provoke Adherbal into a war, he began to make incursions upon his territory. This plan failing, he boldly attacked him in the city of Cirta, and having obtained possession of the place, murdered the king.

6. The Romans, indignant at his conduct, declared war against him. This war was carried on with various success for several years. At last, it seemed about to be happily terminated, by the energy and skill of the consul Metellus. His expectations were, however, frustrated through the intrigues of his lieutenant C-ius Marius.

7. Marius was a man of obscure birth, remarkable for

his extraordinary stature and frightful countenance; rustic in manners, but of resolute spirit and insatiable ambition.

8. After having been several times rejected, he was at last elected to the office of the tribune. He served for some time under Metellus in Africa, but left the army and returned to Rome us a candidate for the office of consul. Notwithstanding the opposition of the senate, he was elected to that office. He then returned to head the army in Africa, where, by his valor and vigilance, the war was soon closed, and the bloody Jugurtha graced a Roman triumph.

9. The continued opposition of the senate to the granting of the freedom of the city of Rome to the inhabitants of the provincial towns, gave rise to a war, called the Social war. This war placed Rome in the situation it had occupied more than three hundred years before. The arms of Italy were turned against it and the small territory immediately surrounding it. This war was at last closed by the granting of the demand of the Italians.

10. At the close of this destructive war, the arms of the Romans were turned against Mithridates, king of Pontus. To the command of the army sent against him Sylla was appointed. He was of patrician origin, and had distinguished himself during the late war; but Marius, who had long been making preparations to lead this expedition, after the departure of Sylla, found means to induce the senate to transfer the command to himself.

11. Instead, however, of resigning the command, Sylla returned at the head of the army to Rome. After a short but severe struggle, the party of Marius was defeated and the leaders were obliged to flee. Atter having restored

na aga yea his Car see suc the esp larg the as l sary tak sure arm ofa 1 ensi Sev con cou gra the too

cou

ima

pea

66

ł

67

peace and procured the appointment of Octavius and Cinna to the consulchip, Sylla returned to pursue the war against Mithridates.

rusmbi-

s at for

rand

nsul:

was

the

war

Ro-

the

inha-

alled

ation

fore.

small

as at

ians.

hs of

ng of

; him

d had

, who

ition.

e" the

Sylla

short

d and

tored

12 -

12. In the meantime, Marius, now in his seventieth year, found means to escape from Italy, in company with his son. They landed on the coast of Africa, not far from Corthage. The ruins of this once magnificent city seemed a fit hiding place for one who had fallen from such a height of power. He soon, however, received from the governor of the province an order to depart.

13. Soon after, hearing that Cinna, the consul, had espoused his cause, and placed himself at the head of a large army, Marius returned to Italy. On arriving at the gates of Rome, he refused to enter, pretending that as he had been excled, a decree of the people was necessary to authorise his return. But while steps were being taken to procure this, and the people were in some measure off their guard, he entered the city at the head of an armed band, and commenced an indiscriminate slaughter of all whom he supposed to be his enemies.

14. Nothing could exceed the horror of the scene that ensued. For five days and nights the slaughter continued. Several who sought to propitiate the tyrant, were at his command slain in his presence, till at last his own officers could not come near him without terror. Having thus gratified his revenge, he proceeded to do away with all the laws enacted by his rival, and, together with Cinna, took upon himself the office of consul.

15. It is not to be supposed that honors thus obtained could yield pleasure. It is said that he was constantly harassed with fears of a swift retribution. Some one, he imagined, in the words of the poet to be continually

sounding in his ears "Horrid is the dying lion's don," which, being applied to himself, seemed to indicate his approaching death. He gave himself up to the excessive use of wine, and died after an illness of seven days, on the seventeenth day of his seventh consulship, in the seventieth year of his age.

16. In the meantime, Sylla, having been informed of the disturbances at Rome, hastily concluded a peace with Mithridates, and returned to Italy with his array. Having overcome all opposition, he entered the city in triumph, and a renewal of the bloody scenes of Marius' consulate took place. Eight thousand persons who had encouraged the late usurptation being taken, he had them put to death in cold blood. He published a list of those who were proscribed, offering a reward of two talents for the head of each. In consequence of this, five thousand persons of distinction perished, among whom were forty senators and sixteen hundred knights.

17. He then proceeded to invest himself with the perpetual dictritorship. At the end of three years, however, he resigned the office, and retired to his country-seat, where he soon after died. By his own direction, his tomb was marked with the following characteristic inscription, "Here lies Sylla, who never was out-done in good offices by his friends, nor in acts of hostility by his enemies."

18. After the death of Sylla, popular favour was for a time divided between Pompey, the greatest general, and Crassus, the richest man in Rome. The latter, by the use he made of his immense wealth, obtained among the people a reputation for great liberality. He is said to have supplied them for three months with corn at his own expense. 19 favore with some labore author all the 20. of his positio full con comma

In this

Julius

the or

comma

appoint " Are

ble."

conceal

his vani

rival, he

who had

did not

themselv

Pompey

annexed

Mithride hands of

22.

21.

95

his

ive

the

ren-

t of

with

ring

npb,

took

late 3

cold

ibed.

In

ction 1

teen

per-

here 🗈

Was

r bis

Here

12 2 23

IOT SCH

and 3

the

the.

d - 10 12

· Man Mi

· Altad

r, be

4.4 7

19. Pompey had, at the commencement of his career, favored the aristocratic party in Rome, but the jealousy with which he was regarded by the senate, had led him for some time to court the applause of the populace. He hadlabored to set aside the laws made by Sylla, against the mathority of the people, and had restored to the tribunes all their former power.

20. Nor did he labour in vain for the gratification of his ruling passions, vanity and ambition. In opposition to the will of the senate, and even without the full concurrence of the tribunes, he was appointed to the command of a fleet, raised for the purpose of clearing the Mediterrancan of the numerous pirates that infested it. In this service he was entirely successful.

21. During his absence his friends, among whom were Julius Cæsar, his future rival, and the celebrated Cicero, the orator, exerted themselves to procure for him the command of the army in Asia. When informed of this appointment, Pompey affected to be displeased, and said: "Are they never to give me respite from care and trouble." But his assumed indifference was not sufficient to conceal his pleasure at this new opportunity to gratify his vanity and ambition.

22. He lost no time in hastening to Asia. On his arrival, he was joined by nearly the whole army of Lucullus, who had preceded him in the command. The soldiers did not hesitate to desert their general, in order to attach themselves to one who had a wider fame. The arms of Pompey were everywhere successful, and he subdued and annexed many provinces to the dominions of the Romans. Mithridates killed himself to avoid falling into the hands of the Romans.

23. Possivey also took part in the contest at this time agitating the Jewish nation. He espoused the cause of Hyrcanus, one of the sons of the late high priest, against his brother Aristobulus. He entered Jerusalem and laid siege to the temple, where the followers of Aristobulus had taken refuge. After a siege of three months it was reduced.

and

adv

he

His

am

less

2

eacl

ger

geth

they

weal

This

ordi

num

4.

5.

6.

9.

10.

11.

12

24. Pompey, to the horror alike of his own countrymen and the Jews, determined to gratify his curiosity by examining the Holy of Holies, which none but the high priest might lawfully enter. He, however, so far respected the religion of the Jews, as to leave untouched the treasure and the golden vessels which were kept there. He restored Hyrcanus to the priesthood or sovereignty of the Jews, but imposed upon him a heavy tribute.

25. During the absence of Pompey, a conspiracy, headed by one Cataline, had nearly brought the republic to the brink of ruin. Cataline was a patrician by birth, who by a life of dissipation had contracted debts to a great amount. He determined to extricate himself from his difficulties by some means, however unlawful, and sought to build his own fortune on the ruins of his country.

26. Through the vigilance of Cicero, the orator, this conspiracy was discovered. Cataline fled to the provinces, where he succeeded in raising an army of twelve thousand men. These were, however, insufficiently armed, and fearing to meet the army sent against him, Cataline attempted to cross the Appenines into Gaul. In this attempt he failed, all the passes being guarded by armies superior to his own. He was, therefore, obliged to give battle, and in the short but bloody conflict that followed, his army was entirely cut off and their leader slain.

71

27. The jealousies that still existed between Pompey and Crassus, Julius Cæsar determined to turn to his own advantage. Cæsar was thirty seven years of age before he took any part in the business of the commonwealth. His youth was spent in the pursuit of pleasure ; but his ambition, though late in being awakened, was yet boundless, as his after career proved.

28. In order to further his own plans, he paid court to each of the rivals apart, and when he found them no longer averse to a union of interests, he brought them together, and persuaded them to forget their former animosities. A combination was thus formed, by which they agreed that nothing should be done in the commonwealth without their mutual concurrence and approbation. This private combination was afterwards, in allusion to the ordinary names of public offices being taken from the number of those who were joined in them, called in mockery " The Triumvirate."

Questions on Chapter Twelfth.

- 1. What was the condition of the Romans abroad ? What is said of the Gauls ?
- 2. What chiefly occupied their attention ? What of Micipes ?
- 3. What of Jugurtha ?
- 4. What influence did he use with the Romans ?
- What was the consequence ?
- 5. What of Jugurtha ?
- 6. What did the Romans do ? Who was general ?
- What of Marius ?
- 8. What offices did he obtain ? What did he then do ? 9. What is said of the Social war ?
- 10. Against whom were the arms of Rome now turned ? What of Sylla ? What of Marius ?
- 11. What did Sylla do? Who were appointed consuls ?
- 12. Where did Marius go ? .

ime of inst laid ulus Was tryy by high spec-

trea-

He

ty of

iracy,

epub-

in by debts imself l, and

untry.

r. this

rovin-

twelve

armed.

ataline

In this

armies :

p give

llowed.

· 金子子!!

13. What did he soon after have 1	
What did he pretend ? What did he then	do 1
14. What followed 1	
15. Did he enjoy his power 1	•
What his said of his sufferings and death "	
te lithet of solid in the squerings and death	•
16. What of Sylla in the meantime ?	
17. How many did he cause to be killed ?	
What did he next do ? How long did he h	old the office T
What inscription did he cause to be put on	his tomb 1
18. Between whom was popular favor divided	after the death
Sylla ? What of Crassus ?	
19. What of Pompey 7	
20. What appointment did he obtain ?	
21. For what did his friends exert themselves	1
How did Pompey receive his appontment	
22. What happened on his arrival in Asia ?	•
23. What is said of his success ? What of Mit	haldsten f
	arighter (
24. In what contests did Pompey take part 1	z 1
. How did he excite the horror of the Jews?	
Whom did he place on the Jewish throne 1	
25. What conspiracy took place during his abs	ience 7
Who was Cataline ?	
36. Who discovered this conspiracy ?	
27. What was the fate of Cataline and his army	11 '
28. What is said of Julius Conser ?	

P

p

h

an m va by

de po

a i mi

lot

Ca

the

lie

va: Re

co

Th

ava

a t ed

oſ

.

What did he do ? What was this combination called ?

CHAPTER XIII.

FROM THE FORMING OF THE FIRST TRIUNVIRATE, TO THE DEATH OF FOMPEY.—B. G. 60 to 48.—YEAR OF ROME 694 to 706.

1. Through the influence obtained by this union, Cæzar was elected consul, notwithstanding the strenuous opposition of the senate, who dreaded the consequences of his ambition on the state. This body had still sufficient influence, however, to procure the election of Bibulus as his colleague; and through his means they hoped to restrainhim.

2. Cæsar began the business of his office with every appearance of moderation. While he took care to exponse

72

ţ

the popular view in every question, he yet was active in devising regulations for the good government of the commonwealth, so that the senate, though still jealous of him, could not oppose him in any particular measure. An act which he obtained for the appropriation of some unoccupied lands for the use of the people, greatly increased his popularity with them, while it gave him an opportunity of a triumph over the senate.

th of

2 12

THE

resar

posi-

of his

t in-

as his

train

svery

DOU

E.C.

3. Knowing that the power must ultimately fall into the hands of him who should be able to retain it by means of an army, Cæsar used every means to obtain the appointment of pro-consul of Gaul. The senate opposed him in vain, and having strengthened his alliance with Pompey, by giving him his daughter Julia in marriage, he took his departure. Thus he was furnished not only with an opportunity of acquiring unequalled military fame, but with a field in which might be trained an army by which he might obtain supreme power.

4. It would be impossible in the short space here allotted to the subject even to enumerate the victories of Cæsar. Within the space of eight years he subdued all the warlike tribes occupying that part of Eu ope which lies between the Mediterranean and the North Sea, and even carried his conquests into Britain. By this means, a vast extent of territory came under the dominion of the Romans.

5. In the mean time Crassus, having obtained the proconsulship of Syria, led an army against the Parthians. The war in Syria had hitherto served to enrich the general sent against it, and Crassus was actuated no less by avarice than by ambition in seeking this command. For a time his arms were successful, but he was at last betrayed into the hands of his enemies, and slain.

6. In the division of the foreign provinces of Rome among the triumvirate, Pompey had chosen Spain. As his choice did not render his presence in that province necessary, he hoped to be able during the absence of his colleagues to advance his own interests at Rome.

81

th

be

of

ta

en

5

"

sto

4]

ene

int

for

All

Po

two

and

the

mai

to

Cæ

whe

Ga

ACC

that

7. By using his influence to lengthen the time of Cæsar's consulship in Gaul, Pompey advanced his rival's interests while he merely supposed he was forwarding is own. Nor was he undeceived till the fame of that great commander's valor, riches, and humanity, made him perceive his mistake. He, therefore, now did all in his power to diminish his rival's reputation, and the death of Julia, which happened about this time, widened the breach between them.

8. Cæsar having solicited the consulship, the friends of Pompey asserted that the laws did not permit a person absent to offer himself for that high office, and demanded that he should first give up the command of the army in Gaul. Cæsar, however, chose to remain in his government, convinced that while he had the command of an army devoted to his interest, he might give both laws and magistrates to the state.

9. The senate, who were devoted to Pompey, in order to weaken the power of Cæsar ordered home two of his legions. Cæsar saw their motive, but as his plans were not yet ready for execution, he sent them home, first having attached them to himself, the officers by benefits, and the soldiers by bounties.

10. The senate next proceeded to recall him from his government, on pretence that his turn of office had nearly expired. Casar offered to give up his power, on condition that Pompey would do the same. The senate blindly

Rome As vince of his

ne of rival's arding f that made l in his eath of oreach

friends person anded my in overnof an a laws.

order of his s were it havts, and

om bis nearly condiplindly confident of their power, and relying upon the assurances of Pompey, rejected his offer; on his refusal to dismiss his soldiers within a certain time, he was to be declared an enemy of the commonwealth.

11. Cæsar, however, seemed in no way disturbed by these violent proceedings, but continued to advance at the head of his army towards Italy. On arriving at the banks of the river Rubicon, which the Romans had ever been taught to consider the sacred boundary of their domestic empire, Cæsar stopped short, as if impressed with the greatness of his enterprise.

12. "If I pass this river," said he to one of his generals, "what miseries shall I bring upon my country; and if I stop, I am undone !" Then after a pause he exclaimed, "Let us go where the gods and the injustice of our enemies call us." Then with renewed energy he plunged into the river, crying out "The die is cast," and there was for Cæsar no return.

13. His advance excited the utmost terror at Rome. All imagined that he was come to lay the city in ruins. Pompey encouraged the citizens by reminding them of the two conquering legions which were at his command in Spain, and of the succors they would be sure to receive from all the allies of Rome. The greater part of the senate, and many of the people, encouraged by his counsels, agreed to follow him, on which, being in no situation to resist Cæsar at Rome, he resolved to lead his forces to Capua, where the two legions that had served under Cæsar in Gaul were stationed.

14. Cæsar, after vainly trying to bring Pompey to an accommodation, followed him thither, taking all the towns that resisted him on his way. He every where assured the

people that he did not come to Italy to destroy the liberty of Roman citizens, but to restore it, and while he dismissed the leaders, he used every means to attach the common soldiers to his army.

D

C

a

m

th

pe

be

re

afi

th

his

me

de

flig

ing

a

co

of

eff

de

th

pe w ho

15. Pompey, wishing to retard the movements of his enemy till the forces of the empire were united to oppose him, retired to Brundusium, where after having employed Cæsar for some tume in a fruitless siege, he privately carried over his forces to Dyrrachium, where the consul had levied a body of troops for his aid.

16. Casar, having no means of transporting his forces, returned to Rome, to take possession of the treasury, which Pompey had neglected to take with him. Having thus provided means for the support of his army, he left Rome, and took his departure for Spain, where Afranus and Petreius, the two lieutenants of Pompey, were at the head of an army of veterans.

17. In the first battle that took place, both sides claimed the victory; but the fortune of Cæsar eventually prevailed, and in the course of forty days he made himself master of Spain. He treated the vanquished army with the greatest kindness, and dismissed them on condition that they would never again serve against him. Cæsar then returned in triumph to Rome, where he was received with every demonstration of joy by the people. He was elected by them dictator and consul, but the first of these offices he laid down, after having held it cleven days.

18. In the mean time, Pompey was making preparations to oppose him. All the kings of the east had declared for him, and he soon found himself at the head of a large army, with a fleet of five hundred sail, commanded by Bibulus. The greater part of the senate and of the

iberty nissed mmon

of bis oppose ployed ivately consul

forces, , which ng thus Rome, and Pehe head

s claimlly prehimself ny with ion that sar then ved with elected e offices

preparahad delead of a nmanded ad of the nobles had joined him, and the approbation of the orators, Cicero and Cato, was of itself almost equivalent to an army.

19. Before proceeding to extremities, Cæsar again made proposals of peace to Pompey, offering to leave their respective claims to the decision of the senate and people of Rome. But Pompey, thinking the people to be too much in the interests of Cæsar to be relied upon, refused, and the preparations for the war went on.

20. In several minor engagements that took place soon after, the soldiers of Pompey had the advantage, and in the first general battle Cæsar was defeated. A part of his cavalry becoming entangled in the enemy's entrenchments, imagined that they were about to be surrounded, or shut up in the works, and betook themselves to flight.

21. So many were killed, or trodden down in attempting to escape, that the slain filled up the ditch, and made a passage for those that followed. So great was the confusion and terror, that even the presence and authority of Cæsar, which on other occasions used to be of so great effect, were totally disregarded. Pompey, however, lost the decisive moment, or was unconcious of his advantage, till the time for improving it was past.

22. Although this defeat was by no means decisive, it was still a great misfortune to Cæsar. It caused the people to think that he was not invincible, and to doubt whether Pompey were not the greatest general. He was, however, by no means daunted. He encouraged his army by reminding them of their former successes; and by punishing some of the officers who had set a shameful example, he seemed to remove the blame of the defeat from the

soldiers. By these means, the sullen dejection of the legions was changed to rage, and an ardent impatience to retrieve their honor took the place of despair.

f

F

h

te

ta

pe

W

ta

ho

re

an

Va

ob

tha

the

pa

R

to

Wu

esc

sec

ren

pas

Co

Eg

it v

the

23. In the meantime Pompey, yielding his own judgment to the solicitations of his officers, determined to decide the fate of kingdoms by a single battle. He, therefore, retired with his army to the Plains of Pharsalia, and there awaited the coming of Cæsar. Nor did he wait long. Cæsar once more finding his army resolute and vigorous, lost no time in advancing; and his troops were soon drawn up at a little distance from those of his opponent.

24. The fame of the commanders, the invincible bravery of the troops composing both armies, and the greatness of the prize for which they contended, rendered the occasion one of unparalleled interest. As the armies approached, the two generals went from rank to rank, encouraging and exciting the hopes of their men.

25. Pompey recalled to the minds of his soldiers their former victory, and assured them of success. He reminded them that they were engaged in the defence of the liberties of their country and supported by its laws; that all the world were spectators of their conduct and wished them success, and ended by urging them to show that detestation of tyranny which had ever animated the hearts of Romans.

26. Cæsar, on his part, went among his men with the serenity that he ever manifested in the midst of danger. He reminded them of the earnestness with which he had ever sought peace, and deplored the blood that must be shed, and the wounds his country must sustain, whoever should be victorious. His soldiers only answered him with looks of ardor and impatience.

f the ice to

judgto detherei, and long. orous, drawn

ess of casion casion ched, raging

their ie reof the ; that vished v that hearts

h the inger. e had ist be oever h him 27. The battle commenced about day-break, and before noon the army of Pompey was utterly defeated. Pompey himself early in the battle seemed entirely to have lost his presence of mind, and fled in dispair to his tent, there to await the result.

28. Cæsar, determined to make the most of his advantage, notwithstanding the weariness of his troops, did not permit the pursuit to slacken till the army of Pompey was entirely scattered. A considerable body of them had taken refuge in an adjacent mountain. By cutting off all hope of succor, Cæsar induced them to surrender. He received their submission with the greatest gentleness, and forbade his soldiers from offering violence to their vanquished contrymen.

29. This was the most complete victory Cæsar ever obtained. His loss did not exceed two hundred, while that of Pompey was fifteen thousand, and twenty four thousand surrendered themselves prisoners of war. On passing over the battle field, so thickly strewn with Romans, Cæsar is said to have been affected even to tears, while he exclaimed to one near bim "They would have it so."

30. In the meantime Pompey, having changed his dress, escaped on horseback to Larissa. From thence he passed by the valley of Tempe to the coast, where he remained only one night in a fisherman's hut. He then passed over to Lesbos, where being joined by his wife Cornelia, and Sextus his youngest son, he set sail for Egypt, where he hoped to obtain the protection of Ptolemy.

31. Ptolemy was yet under age, and his council thought it would be for their advantage to propitiate Cœsar by the murder of his rival. Achillas, the commander of the

forces, and Septimius, a Roman, who had formerly served as a centurion under Pompey, undertook to put the treacherous design into execution. Accordingly, with two or three others, they went in a small boat to the ship to invite Pompey on shore.

32. Cornelia, frantic with grief for their past misfortunes, and fearing for the safety of her husband, entreated him not to trust himself on shore. But Pompey had now no choice. Tenderly bidding farewell to his wife and son, he departed in the boat. When Pompey was about to leave the boat, as it touched the strand, Septimius struck him in the back with a dagger, and Achillas immediately seconded the blow. Pompey, seeing that his death was inevitable, covered his five with his robe, and calmly resigned himself to his fat.

11

1

1

1

1122222

22222 2

3032

3

33d. His head was c. t off and embalmed as a present for Cæsar, and his body cast dishonored on the beach. At night his faithful servant, assisted by a Roman soldier, burned the body, and carefully collecting the ashes, sent them in an urn to Cornelia.

Thus died Pompey, who for nearly forty years enjoyed the reputation of being the greatest general in the world. From his death is dated the extinction of the republic. From this time the power of the senate was gone, and Rome was never henceforth without a master.

Questions on Chapter Thirteen.

- 1. What office did Cæsar now obtain ?
- 2. What is said of the senate ? What is said of Cæsar ? What act did he obtain ? What office did Cæsar now wish ? How did he strengthen his alliance with Pompey ?

.80

HISOF ROME. TORY

erved t the h two nip to

nisforreated d now d son, out to struck diately th was calmly

present beach. soldier. s, sent

enjoyed world. epublic. ne, and

With what was he now furnished 1 4. What is said of Cæsay's victories ? 5. What of Crassus in the meantime ? 6. What of Pompey ? 7. How did he advance the interests of Cæsar ? 8. What widened the breach between them ? What office did Cæsar solicit ? What of the friends of Pompey ? 9. What did Cæsar choose to do ? 10. What did the senate order ? What did they next proceed to do ? What offer did Cæsar make ? 11. What is said of the senate ? What of Cæsar on the banks of the river Rubicon ? 12. What did he say ? 13. What is said of the senate on the approach of Cæsar ? 14. How did Pompey encourage What did Cæsar vainly try ? 15. What did he assure the people ? How did Pompey retard the movements of Cæsar ? 16. Where did Cæsar return to ? Where did he then go ? 17. What of the war ? How did he treat the soldiers ? 18. Who took the side of Pompey ? 19. What did Cæsar offer ? 20. Who was defeated in the first battle ? 21. What is said of the number killed ? 22. How did Cæsar encourage his soldiers after this defeat ? 23. What did Pompey determine to do ? Where did the armies meet ? 24. What rendered the occasion one of unparalleled interest 3 25. How did Pompey encourage his men ? 26. How did Cæsar ? 27. Who was victorious ? What of Pompey ? 28. What is said of the pursuit ? How did Cæsar treat the vanquished ? 29. What is said of this victory ? How was Cæsar affected ?

- 30. What is said of Pompey in the meantime ?
- 31. What of Ptolemy ?32. What was the decision of the council ? What is said of Cornelia ? Describe the death of Pompey ?
- 33. What is said of his servant ? What is said of Pompey ? What of the republic ?

D 2

CHAPTER XIV.

FROM THE DESTRUCTION OF THE COMMONWEALTH TO THE DEATH OF JULIUS CÆSAR.—B. C. 48 TO 44.—YEAR OF BOME 706 TO 710.

1. Cæsar, aware that his power was by no means secure while his rival lived, immediately after the battle of Pharsalia, determined to follow him into Egypt. On his arrival at Alexandria, he was informed of the fate of Pompey, and presented by Achillas with his embalmed head, and his signet ring.

t

C

a

a

sa

of

te

in

du

sh

in

C

or

th

pr

pe

the

a

Fr

Pe

.2. Instead of receiving these tokens of his rival's fate with pleasure, Cæsar either was, or pretended to be, struck with regret and horror at the sight. He shortly afterwards ordered a magnificent tomb to be erected to the memory of Pompey on the spot where his murder was committed.

3. The council of Ptolemy, judging from the manner in which Cæsar had received their bloody gift, that they had little to expect from him, immediately prepared to resist him. The late king of Egypt had left his dominions to the joint government of his children, Ptolemy and Cleopatra, who according to the Egyptian custom were married to each other.

4. Cleopatra, a women of great talents and ambition, not content with a share in the government, aimed at obtaining supreme power. Her first attempt failed, and at the time of Cæsar's arrival in Egypt, she was in a state of banishment. Cæsar gave her hopes of still obtaining the kingdom, and claiming as a Roman consul the right of deciding the question of succession, he commanded both parties into his presence, in order that they might plead their cause before him.

O THE

means battle On fate of balmed

l's fate , struck afterto the ler was

manner at they ared to dominimy and m were

mbition, imed at led, and vas in a still obnsul the imanded y might 5. Photinus, the young king's guardian, instead of accepting the proposal of Cæsar, sent an army of twenty thousand men to besiege him in Alexandria. Cæsar took his station in the palace, which commanded the harbor, and burned his fleet to prevent it failing into the hands of the enemy. He next took possession of the island of Pharos, by which he was enabled to obtain supplies, and in this situation determined to withstand the united force of the Egyptians.

6. Cleopatra determined to trust to the patronage of Cæsar, rather than to her own forces. She is described as being a miracle of beauty, grace, and wit. Her talents and accomplishments were of the highest order. She is said to have been able to give audience to the ambassadors of seven different countries without the aid of an interpreter. She was now in the bloom of youth, and confident in the power of her own charms, sought only to be introduced into the presence of Cæsar. The event proved that she had not overrated her influence. Cæsar was soon induced to declare in her favor.

7. The Alexandrians, finding it impossible to dislodge Cæsar, had recourse to their usual arts of dissimulation, in order to get the young king out of his power. They, therefore, pretended that the presence of their rightful prince was all that was necessary to sanction a treaty of peace, which they were willing to make. Cæsar, aware of their design, yet having nothing to fear from the abilities of a weak boy, suffered him to depart.

S. Hostilities were again renewed with greater vigor. From the almost insurmountable difficulties of his situation, Cæsar was at last relieved by the arrival of Mithridates Pergamenus. This general took the city of Pelusium

84

e

defeated the Egyptian army, and having joined Cæsar, they attacked the enemy's camp, and utterly defeated the whole army. Ptolemy himself was drowned in attempting to escape by sea.

9. Cæsar being thus left sole master of Egypt, appointed Cleopatra and her infant brother joint governors. Instead, however, of hastening to quiet the disturbances which were rising in Rome, he surrendered himself a willing captive to the unrivaled charms of the young queen. Yielding at length to the remonstrances of his brave veterans, he left Egypt in order to oppose Pharnaces, king of the Bosphorus, who had been making inroads on the dominions of the Romans in the east.

ċ

C

i

b

i

0

p

0

a

u

0

H

ti

P

10. He was not long in subduing him, and his victory over him furnished Cæsar with an opportunity of comparing his glory with that of Sylla and Pompey, the former leaders of the Romans in Asia. At this period he is said to have exclaimed " how cheap is fame, when obtained in fighting against such an enemy," and in the triumph which he afterward enjoyed, the trophies of this particular victory were distinguished by labels, containing the following inscription "I came. I saw. I conquered."

11. At the close of this war, Cæsar returned to Rome, where his presence was much needed. Antony, who governed in his absence, had filled the city with riot and debauchery, and many disturbances had arisen in consequence, which nothing but the presence of Cæsar could subdue. By his moderation and humanity he soon restored order.

12. Soon after this Cæsar took his departure for Africa, where Pompey's party had for some time been gathering strength. There the same success attended him. Wher-

æsar, d the pting

poinrnors. pances willing queen. e vetcing of he do-

victory of comy, the period , when in the of this ntaining uered." Rome, y, who iot and consetr could restored

Africa, atherir g Wherever the armies met, his legions triumphed, and the death of all the leaders soon put an end to the war.

13. Cato, who after the battle of Pharsalia had retired into Africa, had for some time retained his position in Utica, and endeavoured by every means in his power to inspire the citizens to resistance. Finding, however, that their courage failed them, he advised some of his friends to escape by sea, and others to submit themselves to the elemency of the conqueror.

14. When entreated to endeavor to propitiate Cæsar, he refused, saying "I was born free; and cannot in my old age accustom myself to servitude." Having passed the day in assisting his friends to escape, he retired to his chamber with his usual calmness. After some time spent in reading Plato's dialogue on the immortality of the soul, he stabbed himself. His servants hearing him fall, rushed in and would have bound up the wound, but tearing it open with his own hands, he expired.

15. On his return to Rome, Cæsar was received by the people with every demonstration of joy. A thanksgiving of forty days was decreed for his late success. He was appointed dictator for ten years, and the office of censor, which had long been abolished, was restored in his person, under the title of *magister morum*, or master of the morals of the people.

16. The most extravagant honors were paid to him. He was to be preceded by seventy-two lictors, three times the number that used to attend dictators. He was permitted to speak first on all subjects in the senate. It was decreed that he should have a car like that of Jupiter placed in the same temple with that god, and that his statue, with the title of demi-god, should be erected on a

globe representing the earth. It is said that Cæsar refused some of these honors, but in those he accepted he still betrayed a vanity which but rarely accompanies superiority of understanding and courage.

17. Having restored order to Rome, Cæsar was obliged once more to repair to Spain, to oppose an army which had been raised by the sons of Pompey. His arms were crowned with their usual success. Cneius Pompey was slain, but his brother Sextus escaped, and afterwards became formidable on account of his piracies to the people of Rome.

U

t

66

n

pi

A

ge

pl

hi

C

tai

ly

nu

wł

ca

sta

ma

CO

thi

ful

gat

at

dea

fou the

18. This was the last of Cæsar's wars. From this time he employed himself in projecting public works of great extent and variety. He adorned the city with magnificent public buildings; he rebuilt Corinth and Carthage, sending colonies to both cities; he undertook to level several mountains in Italy; and to drain the Pontine marshes near Rome. But in the midst of plans which would have required more than a common-lifetime to execute, the career of Cæsar was suddenly closed.

19. Since the expulsion of the tyrant Tarquin, the name of king had been held in abhorrence by the Roman people. So often had they seen conquered monarchs led in triumph, put to death, or left to drag out a life of poverty and neglect, that they began to look upon monarchy as necessarily connected with servility and barbarism. When, therefore, Cæsar was accused of aspiring to the title as well as the power of king, the first fatal blow was struck at the root of his popularity.

20. A conspiracy was at last laid against him, in which were engaged no less than sixty senators, most of whom were of Cæsar's own party. At the head of this con-

spiracy were Marcus Brutus and Caius Cassius. The former was the nephew of Cato, and a lineal descendant of that Brutus who had been instrumental in the expulsion of the Tarquins. His life had been spared by Cæsar after the battle of Pharsalia, and be never ceased to bestow upon him marks of favor and Brutus was induced to sacrifice his friend to the sts of his country. "Not that he loved Cæsar less, but that he loved Rome more."

21. On the day appointed for his assassination, Cæsar proceeded, with his usual attendants, to the senate house. A slave, who brought tidings of the conspiracy, could not get near him for the crowd. Artemidorus, a Greek philosopher, who had discovered the whole plot, presented to him a paper containing the heads of his information, but Cæsar gave it with other papers into the hands of his secretary.

22. On entering the senate house, he was immediately surrounded by the conspirators. Cimber, one of their number, on pretence of pleading in behalf of his brother, whom Cæsar had banished, threw himself at his feet, and caught hold of his robe.

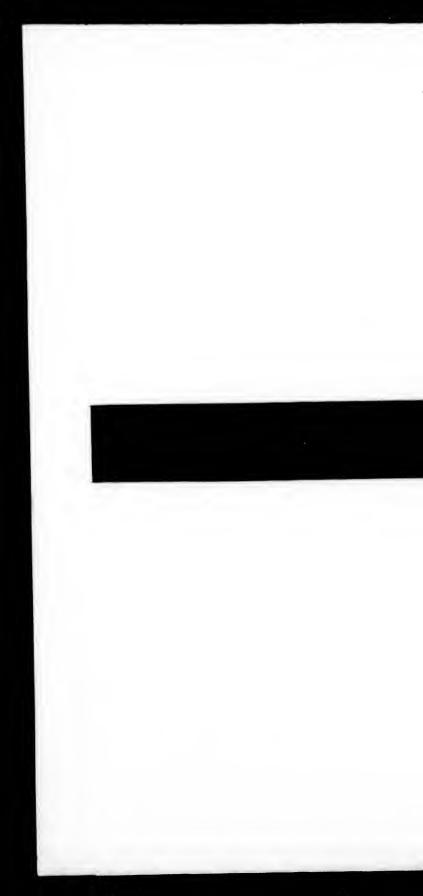
23. This was the signal agreed upon. Casca first stabbed him in the shoulder, and a general attack was then made by the others. He defended himself with undaunted courage, till Brutus approaching, wounded him in the thigh. Cæsar then yielded to his fate. Looking reproachfully at his friend, he said " and thou, O Brutus !" and gathering his robe about him, he fell covered with wounds, at the base of Pompey's statue. At the time of his death Cæsar was fifty six years of age. It happened fourteen years after he had commenced the conquest of the world.

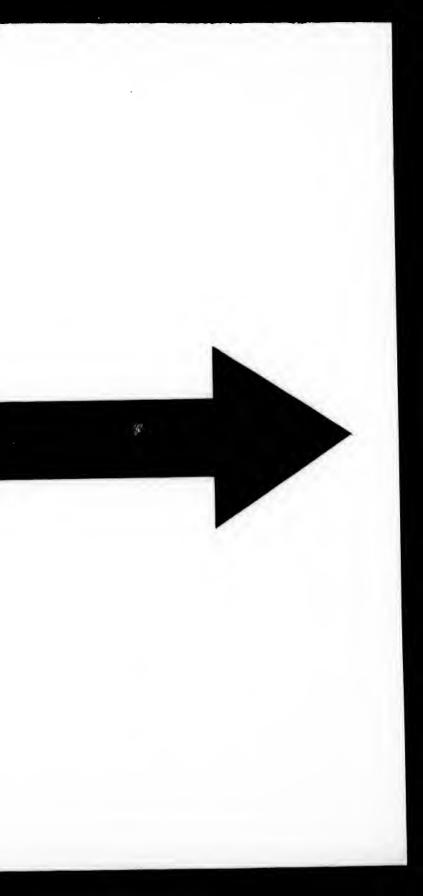
still erioblihich vere was becople

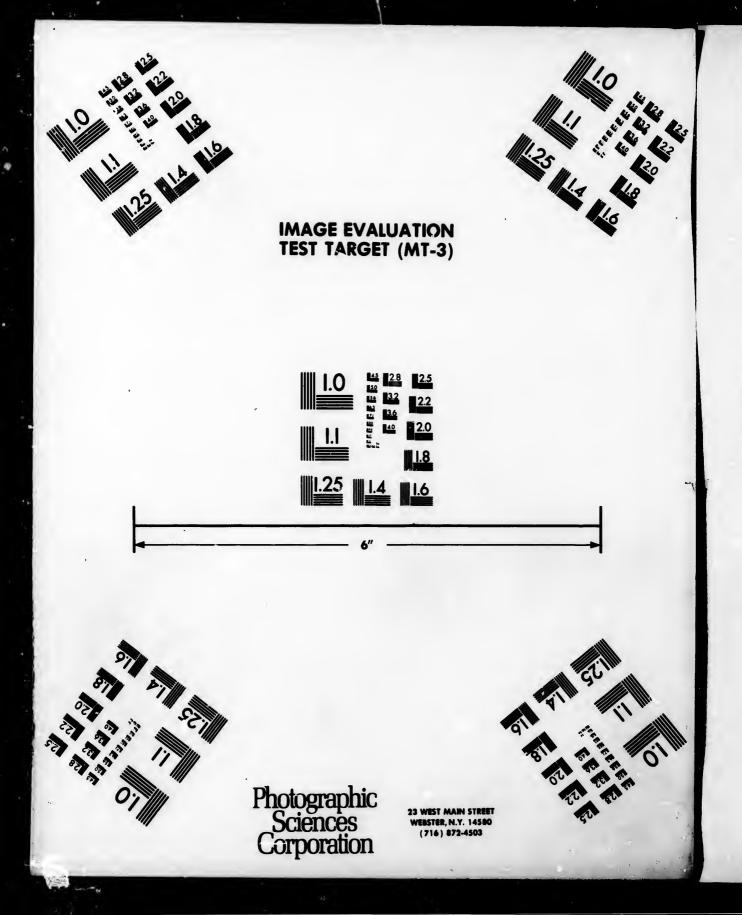
this ks of with Carok to atine which o ex-

, the oman archs fe of monarbaing to blow

which whom con-









Questions on Chapter Fourteen.

ŧ G

N S hi aı ne

dis

pa se

of th hi th th ge

T w g w

	what did Casar determine to do f	
	What took place on his arrival at Alexandria ?	
2.	How did Cæsar receive it 7	
	What did he order ?	
3.	What is said of the council of Ptolemy ?	
	What of the late king of Egypt ?	
4.	What is said of Cleopatra ?	*
	What did Cæsar command ?	
5.	What is said of Photinus the young king's guardian ?	
	Where did Cæsar take his station ?	
6.	What did Cleopatra determine ?	
	What is said of her ?	•
	What did she only seek ?	
7.	What is said of the Alexandrians ?	
	What of Cæsar ?	
8.	What followed ? What is said of Mithridates ?	
	What of Ptolemy ?	
9.	Who were appointed joint governors of Egypt ?	
	What is said of Cæsar ?	
	Whom did he at last go to oppose ?	
10.	What was his success ? Why did his victory give him ple	asure ?
	What did he say after the first victory ?	
	What of the trophies of the victory ?	
	What is said of Antony?	
	Where did Cæsar next go ? What was his success ?	
	What is said of Cato ?	
14.	Describe the manner of his death ?	
15.	How was Cæsar greeted on his return to Rome?	
	What offices were confered on him ?	
16.	What extravagant honors were paid to him ?	,
	How did he receive them ?	
17.	Where did he next repair ?	:
	What was his success ?	e
18.	How did he now spend his time ?	
	Mention some of his plans ?	
19.	What were the feelings of the Romans towards monarch	y 1
20.	What was the first blow struck at the popularity of Cas	ar 1
	What conspiracy was formed ?	
	Who were at its head ? What is said of Brutus ?	

- 21. What attempts were made to inform Cæsar of the plot ?
 22. What of Cimber ?
 23. Describe the death of Cæsar ? What was his age ?

CHAPTER XV.

FROM THE DEATH OF CESAR TO THE DEATH OF BRUTUS B. C. 44 TO 42. - YEAR OF ROME 710 TO 712.

1. The conspirators seemed to have formed no plan, beyond the death of Cæsar. Being on every side beset with dangers, and fearful that Antony, now sole consul, would exert the power of the magistrate against them, they retired to the capitol, which was guarded by a body of gladiators in the pay of Brutus.

2. All parties seemed for a time to be held in suspense. Mark Antony, who had been next in command to Cæsar, soon determined to embrace the opportunity to advance his own plans. He was in a time of sccurity extravagant and dissipated, apparently unfit to attend to serious business, but when the occasion required, he did not fail to display superior abilities.

3. Having possessed himself of the will, and other papers of Cæsar, he next proceeded to assemble the senate. This body found themselves in circumstances of great difficulty. Many of them had been raised to their present dignity by Cæsar, and to have pronounced him an usurper, would have been to deprive themselves of their honors, yet to vote him innocent, might endanger the state. As might have been expected, a middle course was taken. The acts of Cæsar were approved, but a general pardon was granted to the conspirators.

4. This course was by no means satisfactory to Antony. There were many among the conspirators who he knew would oppose his plans, and he determined in some way to get rid of them. By making it appear that Cæsar in his will had remembered the Roman people, and by extoling his generosity to them, he first secured their attention.

leasure?

chy ? Esar ?

ot ?

5. He then demanded from the senate that Cæsar should be honored with a public funeral. On this occasion, by his eloquence, and the displaying of Cæsar's wounds, and his rent and bloody mantle, he excited the indignation of the people against the conspirators to such a degree, that they burned their houses to the ground, and were only prevented from taking vengeance upon their persons by the armed force that guarded them.

6. Though the conspirators had been obliged to leave the city, Antony soon found that he was not destined to obtain supreme power. In the grand nephew and heir of the late dictator, he found a formidable rival. Caius Octavius Cæsar, though not yet twenty years of age, by his unrivaled powers of intrigue, and the influence he had obtained over a part of the army, had placed himself in a position almost to dictate to Antony. 8

C

h

je

tł

di

A

m

be

sus

R

ot

WO

Ca

litt

the

the

the

pos

pos

7. Neither being able to obtain supreme power, they determined to unite their resources, and govern together. With them was associated Lepidus, a man of no capacity, but useful to both, as holding the balance of power between them, and as a witness to transource with which neither was willing to trust the other.

8. Under the name of the Second Triumvirate they were to hold the supreme power for five years. To Antony was allotted Gaul, to Lepidus Spain, and to Octavius Africa and the islands of the Mediterranean. Italy and the eastern empire were to remain in common till the general enemy was subdued.

9. It was agreed that the personal enemies of each, as as well as those from whom they might expect opposition to their plans, should be destroyed. Each presented a list of persons obnoxious to him. Thus not only their enemies,

Cæsar casion, vounds, gnation degree, d were persons

o leave ined to heir of Caius age, by he had elf in a

er, they ogether. apacity, wer beh which

hey were Antony Octavius and the till the

each, as pposition ted a list enemics, but many of their friends were destroyed, for it was found that the enemies of one were often the best friends of the other.

10. In the meantime, Brutus and Cassius, the principal conspirators against Cæsar, having retired into Greece, persuaded the Roman students at Athens to declare for the cause of freedom. In Syria and Macedonia they succeeded in raising large armies, and soon found themselves in a condition to support a contest on which the empire of the world depended.

11. While at Sardis, Brutus and Cassius are said to have had a serious misunderstanding, the effect of a jealousy which had been industriously raised between them. But no bad consequences arose from it, for immediately joining their armies, they hastened to oppose Antony and Octavius, who were rapidly advancing to meet them.

12. Once more the empire of the world was about to be decided by a single battle. It was a time of fearful suspense. Should the arms of Brutus be successful, the Roman people might again form a free republic. On the other hand, should Octavius triumph, they had to fear a worse tyranny than ever had been exercised by Julius Cæsar.

13. Brutus and Cassius took their station each on a little hill near the city of Philippi. Behind them was the sea, by which they might obtain supplies, and between them and the plain on which the Triumviri had encamped their army, was an impassible morass. In this favorable position, it was their policy to delay a battle as long as possible.

14. On the contrary, the Triumviri, not being able to

obtain supplies by sea, and conscious that their army could not long be sustained by the resources of the surrounding country, were eager immediately to engage. A road was constructed by them through the morass which separated the armies. The tall reeds of the morass having concealed the soldiers while making the road, Brutus and Cassius were in some measure taken by surprise when the enemy advanced over it, and the impatience of their own soldiers prevented a longer delay.

15. A battle therefore ensued. Antony lcd his forces against that part of the army commanded by Cassius, and in.a short time put his cavalry to flight. Cassius did all that the courage of a single man could do to rally his troops, but in vain. Supposing the battle to be entirely lost, and determined not to fall into the hands of the enemy, he returned into his tent and killed himself.

1

iı

A

h

0

SE

to

h

tl

si

th

m

of

W

ha

he

SW

an

16. Brutus still kept possession of the camp, and did all in his power to encourage his men. Still he determined for the present to avoid seeking another battle. His design was to starve the enemy, whom he knew to be in great want of provisions. After a respite of twenty days, he was, however, forced to give in to the impatience of his men, and try the fate of a battle.

17. In the engagement that followed, wherever Brutus commanded in person, he had the advantage. But the troops of Cassius being seized with a panic, communicated their terror to the rest, and soon the whole army gave way. In the midst of his bravest officers Brutus fought with undaunted courage. The son of Cato, and the brother of Cassius, fell fighting at his side. At last, however, yielding to the necessity of the case, Brutus fled.

18. Octavius and Antony, secure of the victory,

thought only of getting Brutus into their power. He was on the point of being overtaken, when Lucilius, his friend, determined to save his life by the sacrifice of his own. Giving himself up to a band of Thracians, he told them he was Brutus, and requested to be conducted into the presence of their general.

19. Antony seeing the Thracians approach, and being informed of the prisoner's capture, prepared himself for an interview with his enemy. But Lucilius, advancing with a cheerful air, said, 'It is not Brutus that is taken. Fortune has not yet had the power to commit so great an outrage upon virtue. As for my life, it is well loct in preserving his honor. Take it, fcr I have deceived you." Antony struck with such fidelity, pardoned him, and gave him his friendship.

20. Meanwhile Brutus with a few friends had escaped over a rivulet, and night coming on, they concealed themselves under a rock. An officer whom Brutus had sent out to ascertain the extent of their defeat, did not return, and he rightly judged that he had fallen into the hands of the enemy. Before the first battle, Brutus had told Cassius that if he was defeated, he would not fall alive into the power of Octavius, and he now prepared to end his misfortunes with his life.

21. After calling to mind with great tenderness many of his friends, who had fallen in the battle, he bade farewell to all present, one by one, saying aloud, that he was happy in never having been betrayed by any one whom he had trusted as a friend. Soon after, falling upon his sword, he expired in the forty-third year of his age.

22. This catastrophe excited the imaginations of men, and many prodigies and presages are said to have pre-

sur-A which hav-Brutus rprise ace of

forces

us, and did all ally his entirely of the and did e deterr battle. ew to be f twenty patience

r Brutus But the nunicated my gave us fought and the last, howus fied. e victory,

ceded it. A spectre, it was said, had presented itself in the night to Brutus, as he was about to pass the Hellespont. It told him, that it was his evil genius, and bade him expect him again at Philippi. And it was asserted that it had appeared to him on the eve of the battle, and foretold his defeat and death.

Questions on Chapter Fifteen.

d

sl sb

an

ha

Ro

joy

for

to

had

hav

bee

par

rig

the

to r

que

fron

tem

thei

unm

- 1. What did the conspirators do after the death of Casar ?
- 2. What is said of Mark Antony ?
- 3. What of the Senate ?
- 4. Did their course please Antony ? How did he excite the attention of the people ?
- 5. How did he excite them at the funeral of Cæsar ? What was the consequence ?
- 6. In whom did Antony find a rival ? What is said of Octavius ?
- 7. What did the Triumviri determine to do ? What is said of Lepidus ?
- 8. Under what title were they to govern ? How did they divide the Empire between them ?
- 9. What of their enemies ?
- 10. What of Brutus and Cassius in the meantime?
- 11. What of Brutus and Cassius at Sardis ?
- 12. What is said of the suspense before the armies met ?
- 13. Where had Brutus and Cassius taken their station ? What advantage had it ?
- 14. What of the army of the Triumviri? What did they do ?
- 15. What of Cassius in the battle that ensued ?
- 16. What did Brutus determine ? What forced him to fight ?
- 17. What happened in the battle ? What is said of Brutus ?
- 18. What did Antony and Octavius order ? What did Lucilius determine ?
- 19. What did he say to Antony ? How did Antony treat him ?
- 20. What of Brutus in the meantime 1
- 21. Describe his death ?
- 22. What did this catastrophe excite 1

CHAPTER XVI.

FROM THE DEATH OF BRUTUS TO THE DEATH OF ANTONY. B. C. 42 TO 30.—YEAR OF ROME 712 TO 742.

1. After this decisive victory, Octavius and Antony proceeded to a new division of the empire, without any reference to the claims of Lepidus. Octavius had in addition to his former share, Spain and Numantia; Antony, Africa and the further Gaul. It was agreed that Antony should remain to close the war in the east, while Octavius should return to conduct the war against Sextus Pompey, and in due time to settle the veterans on the lands which had been promised them.

2. When the news of the victory of Philippi arrived in Rome, it was received with an outward appearance of joy, but with real sorrow. The inhabitants of Italy looked forward with terror to the return of the army who were to be rewarded with the richest of their possessions. They had already seen enough of the cruelty of Octavius to have little to expect from his moderation.

3. At the formation of the Triumviri the army had been flattered with the hope of being settled in the richest parts of Italy, and they now insolently demanded that the rightful possessors should be driven out to make room for them. Octavius was no longer able, had he been desirous, to restrain them, and the greatest misery was the consequence. Persons of every age and sex being driven from their possessions, crowded to Rome, taking refuge in temples and other public buildings, and filling the city with their lamentations.

4. Octavius was not long permitted to enjoy his power unmolested. The friends of Antony, fearful lest his in-

elf in pont. him that fore-

e atten-

What ad-

terests should be overlooked, and eager to obtain a share of the power enjoyed by Octavius, were busy in exciting a party against him. Among the chief of these were Lucius and Fulvia, the brother and wife of Antony. They were, however, soon subdued. An indiscriminate slaughter of their adherents took place. Fulvia escaped to Greece, and Julia, the aged mother of Antony, took refuge with Sextus Pompey.

FI

V

TAR

In

O' Th Sto

Wi To

A .

Swe Tha

A at

Of il Her

Ent

Whi Had

And

by h

Coll

Athe

braid

He

Pom

at th

atten

howe

hostil

Fulv

9.

8.

5. In the meantime Antony, believing that all his troubles were at an end, was indulging his natural taste for pleasure and dissipation. He had passed through Greece and Syria, receiving homage and disposing of estates and provinces to his retainers. To his cook he is said to have given a large estate for having pleased him in the cooking of a supper.

6. Now, while his friends were striving to advance his interests at home, he was spending his time in riot and dissipation with Cleopatra, at Alexandria. He had summoned her into his presence, to answer a charge of having furnished Cassius and the other conspirators with supplies.

7. She, with her usual reliance upon the power of her own charms, was by no means loath to obey his summons. She was now in her twenty-seventh year, and the beauty and grace which had enslaved the heart of Cæsar, had lost nothing of their power to please, while her mental attractions had greatly increased.

It is not to be supposed that the heart of the weak Antony was proof against her charms. She sailed down the river Cydnus with a splendid retinue, and dazzled Antony with the profusion of her ornaments, the elegance of her equipage, and the charms of her person.

The following is Shakspeare's description of her appear.

ance, as she sailed down the Cydnus, almost in the words of the historian :

The barge she sat in, like a burnish'd throne, Burn'd on the water; the poop was beaten gold : Purple the sails; and so perfumed, that The winds were love-sick with them. The oars were ailver, Which to the tune of flutes kept stroke, and made The water, which they beat, to follow faster, As amorous of the strokes. I or her own person, It beggar'd all description. She did lie In her pavillion (cloth of gold, of tissue) O'er picturing that Venus, where we see The fancy out-work nature. On each side her Stood pretty dimpled b ys, like smiting Cupids, With diverse colour'd fans, whose yund did seem To glow the dilicate cheeks which they did cool.

At the helm

A seeming mermaid steer'd ; the silken tackle Swell with the touch of those flawer soft hands That do perform the office. From the barge A strange invisible perfume hits the sense Of the adjacent wharfs. The city cast Her people out upon her ; and Antony Enthroned in the market place, did sit Whistling to the uir, which but for vacency Had gone to gaze on Cleopatra too, And left a gap in nature !

8. He was, however, effectually roused from his lethargy by hearing of the state of his affairs in Italy and the East. Collecting his army, he proceeded towards Greece. At Athens he had an interview with Falvia, in which he upbraided her with being the cause of his present troubles. He left her on her deathbed, and being joined by Sextus Pompey, hastened to take possession of Brundusium, at the same time directing Pompey, in order to divert the attention of the enemy, to land on the coast of Italy.

9. Octavius hastened to oppose him. It soon appeared, however, that both generals were averse to proceeding to hostilities, and a treaty was proposed. The death of Fulvia greatly facilitated these negociations. A marriage

share exciting ere Lu-They aughter Greece, ge with

all his ral taste through posing of cook he g pleased

vance his riot and had sumof having th supplies. ver of her summons. the beauty. Cæsar, had her mental

f the weak sailed down and dazzled the elegance

her appear-

between Antony and Octavia, the sister of Octavius, was proposed, and all things being at last arranged to the mutual satisfaction of the generals, the treaty was ratified.

10. In this treaty, however, Sextus Pompey had no part. Exasperated at the way in which he had been treated, he shut up the ports of Italy, and prevented the usual supply of corn from being brought from Sicily. The tumults caused by the consequent scarcity of food, obliged Octavius and Antony to propose terms to Pompey, and a treaty was concluded.

11. Peace being restored, the leaders mutually invited each other to a feast. The first was given by Sextus, on board one of his ships. Menas, once the slave of the great Pompey, but now emancipated, and the first sea officer in the fleet of his son, whispered to him during the feast, that now was the time to revenge the death of his father, and to recover the rank of his family, by cutting off the authors of their misfortunes. "Let me cut the cable" said he " and put to sea. I promise you none of them shall escape." "That might have been done by Menas without consulting me," replied Sextus, " but my word is sacred, and must not be broken."

d

12. Octavius had no motive for agreeing to this treaty with Pompey, but the immediate relief of the people, and it was soon broken by him. A naval war was carried on between them for several years, with various results, but at last Pompey was utterly defeated, his fleet destroyed and taken, and he himself obliged to take refuge in the island of Lesbos. Soon after, having entreated the protection of Antony, he was by his orders put to death.

13. A disagreement having arisen between Octavius and Lepidus, the former used every means to influence

to the ratified. no part. ated, he | supply tumults ed Octay, and a

y invited y Sextus, ve of the e first sea during the ath of his by cutting ne cut the ou none of en done by s, "but my

this treaty people, and as carried on as results, but et destroyed refuge in the ed the protecdeath.

reen Octavius s to influence the troops of his colleague in his own favor. In this he was so successful, that Lepidus found himself deserted in his camp, and came in the dress of a private citizen to entreat the elemency of his rival. Octavius received him kindly, and permitted him to retire to Italy, where he spent the rest of his life in obscurity, unnoticed alike by friend or foe.

14. Antony, in the meantime, was carrying on war against the Parthians. While in Syria, he had sent an officer of high rank to invite Cleopatra to join him there. At this time, among the other tokens of his passion and liberality, he presented her with Phœnicia, Celo Syria, and Cyprus, together with a great part of Cilicia, Arabia, and Judea. When she returned home, Antony went to pursue the war, having agreed to spend the winter with her in Alexandria.

15. The war against the Parthians was altogether disastrous. Antony suffered a constant succession of defeats, and he was at last obliged to retire, having lost a fourth part of his army. He hastened to Alexandria, where he endeavored to conceal the extent of his losses, and to forget his defeats in the society of Cleopatra.

16. Octavia, justly indignant at the conduct of her husband, and at his evident preference for the society of the queen of Egypt, determined to try her personal influence with him. The arts of her rival, however, still prevailed against her. Cleopatra succeeded in persuading Antony to forbid the visit of his wife, and even to decline the presents she had prepared for him, and Octavia returned with indignation to Rome.

folly and dissipation. He repudiated Octavia, and declared

Cleopatra to be his wife, and queen of all the countries he had conquered. He made his will, allotting many of the Roman provinces to his children. This being formally executed in writing, he ordered it to be sent to Rome, and deposited in the sacred records of the temple of Vesta.

18. Octavius, indignant at the treatment of his sister, and desirous to remove one whom he had ever looked upon as a rival, was not long in proceeding to extremities. He professed, however, to consider Cleopatra as the principal in the war which he soon after declared, and spoke contemptuously of Antony, as one who had given himself up to the control of a designing woman.

19. Some time was spent by both parties in preparation. Their land forces were nearly equal. The fleet of Antony was much superior in number to that of Octavius, but the ships of the latter were better built and manned by better sailors. A decisive naval action took place near Actium, at the mouth of the gulf of Ambracia.

h

4

re

20. The land armies were drawn up on opposite sides of the gulf, as spectators of the battle. Both sides fought with great ardor, and it was for some time doubtful which would have the advantage. At length Cleopatra herself decided the fate of the battle. She had in the beginning of the action been near the line, and had continued to watch the battle, till overcome with anxiety and terror, she ordered her vessel to a little distance for greater safety. Being once in motion, influenced by fright, or, as some say, willing to betray Antony, she continued her flight.

21. The gilded poop and purple sail of her veasel, rendered her retreat conspicuous, and sixty ships of the Egyptian squadron left the action and followed her. Antony.

either giving up all for lost, or attempting to rally his fleet, followed. He was received on board the galley of Cleopatra and became the companion of her flight.

22. The army of Antony witnessed his flight, but believed, that although vanquished at sca, he would soon return and place himself at their head. They, therefore, stood firm, and for a time resisted all the attempts of Octavius to win them to his interest. Finding, however, that their leaders took no steps to join them, they at last went over in a body to Octavius.

23. The fortunes of Antony and Cleopatra were now at a low ebb. They endeavored to propitiate Octavius, but he would hear of no terms, but an entire surrender. Cleopatra is accused of a willingness to betray Antony into the hands of his rival, provided a separate treaty could be granted to herself. Octavius held out to her hopes of success, but so fearful was she of falling into his hands, that she determined to leave Egypt. For this purpose she had a part of her fleet conveyed from the Nile to the red Sea. This project, however, she was induced to abandon.

24. Octavius, in the meantime, had invaded Egypt, and the city of Pellusium had fallen into his hands, in consequence of the treachery of Cleopatra, who hoped by this means to obtain his favor. The defection of his Roman legions in Africa, gave the last blow to the hopes of Antony. He seemed no longer capable of planning or acting, and gave himself up to despair.

25. Cleopatra, on the approach of the conqueror, had retired into a monument lately built on a plan of great magnificence, for the royal sepulchre. Here, having secured her treasures, she caused it to be given out that she

ries he of the ormally Rome, Vesta. s sister, looked emities. as the ed, and d given

preparafleet of Octavius, manned ace near

ite sides s fought iul which a herself the beand had h anxiety itance for by fright, tinued her

asel, renthe Egyp-Antony,

was dead. When this report reached Antony, all his former passion returned. He declared himself incapable of supporting existence in a world which no longer held Cleopatra, and called upon Eros, a freed slave, to fulfil a promise he had made, and end the sorrows of his master.

26. Eros took his sword, but instead of killing his master, plunged it into his own bosom. Antony immediately seized the weapon, and gave himself a mortal wound. Being told at this moment that Cleopatra still lived, he revived, and entreated to be carried into her presence. Not daring to open the gates, Cleopatra, with the assistance of her maids, drew him up through a window. In his last moments, he attemped to soothe the grief and anguish which the sight of his blood caused Cleopatra, and besought her to save her life if she could do so with honor; adding "though I fall, my fate is not ignominious; a Roman myself, I at last by a Roman am overcome," and thus saying, he expired.

27. Octavius, fearing that Cleopatra would follow the example of Antony, used every means to reconcile her to life. He was determined, if possible, to secure her treasure, which it was rumoured she intended to destroy, and he hoped that her presence, and that of her children, would grace his triumph on his return to Rome.

28. In an interview which took place between them, Cleopatra used all the arts which had been so successful with the first Cæsar, and with Antony, but Octavius was not to be beguiled by them. She presented him with an inventory of her treasures, only reserving a few jewels as presents for Livia and Octavia, the wife and sister of Octavius. He left her, believing that she had reconciled herself to her fate.

all his capable er held fulfil a master. ling his immewound. lived, he resence. he assisow. In and anatra, and th honor; s; a Rome," and

follow the ile her to r treasure, y, and he en, would

een them, successful tavius was m with an jewels as ster of Ocreconciled

29. In this he was, however, mistaken. She had no intention of submitting to become a spectacle to the Romans. By means of one of her servants, disguised as a countryman, an asp was conveyed to her in a basket of She then wrote to Octavius, informing him of her fruit. design, and expressing joy that she had found a means of escape from her enemies. Having then attired herself in her royal robes, and partaken of a sumptuous banquet with her maidens, she applied the asp to her arm, and soon after expired. She died in the thirty-ninth year of her age, having lived with Antony fourteen years.

Questions on Chapter Sixteen.

- 1. After the battle what did Antony and Octavius proceed to do ? What was agreed between them ?
- 2. How was the news of the victory received at Rome ?
- 3. What had the soldiers been promised ? What was the consequence ?
- 4. Who excited a party against Octavius ?
- With what success ?
- 5. What of Antony in the meantime ? What of his passage through Greece and Syria ? What of his cook ?
- 6. While his friends were striving to advance his interest, where was he ?
- 7. What is said of Cleopatra ?
- 8. What raised him from his lethargy ?
- What of Fulvia ? Of what town did he take possession ? 9. What is said of both generals ?
- How was a treaty concluded ?
- 10. What is said of Sextus ? What followed ?
- 11. What of the feasts that followed the treaty 3 What is said of Mcnas ?
- 12. What is said of Octavius? What was the fate of Pompey ?
- 13. What is said of Lepidus ? 14. What of Antouy in the meantime ?
- What tokens of liberality did he give to Cleopatra ? 15. What is said of the war against the Parthians ?
- 16. What is said of Octavia ? What of Cleopatra ?
- 17. What new folies did Antony now commit ?

18. Against whom did Octavius declare war ?

- 19. What is said of the forces of each?
- Where did a decisive naval engagement take place? 20. Who decided the fute of the battle ?

21. Who followed her ?

22. What is said of the army of Antony ?

- 23. What is said of Antony and Cleopatra ? How did Cleopatra propose to escape ?
- 24. What of Octavius ?
- What gave the last blow to the hopes of Antony ? 25. Where did Cleopatra retire ?
- What effect had the tidings of her death on Antony ?
- 26. Describe the death of Antony.
- 27. What did Octavius fear ?
- What did he intend with regard to Cleopatra and her children ?

ł

of th he

ma Re

po

ob

hop

to

som

sup

it t

pro

pow

sena

com

men

uing

relu

gove

- 28. What is said of their interview ?
- 29. Describe the death of Cleopatra.

CHATER XVII.

FROM THE DRATH OF ANTONY, TO THE DEATH OF TIBEBIUS. B. C. 30 TO A. D. 37.—YEAR OF ROME 724 TO 790.

1. After the death of Antony, Octavius hastened to secure to the Romans the possession of Egypt. He deprived the Egyptians of all the forms of their monarchy, and gave them a governor of his own appointment. Instead of returning immediately to Rome, he awaited in Samos the assembling of the troops, who were to share the triumph he was to enjoy.

2. Octavius, though inferior to his uncle in the capacity of a soldier, was his superior in those arts the exercise of which were necessary to secure the continuance of power. His first care on his return to Rome was to secure the support of the friends of Antony. By declaring the late war against Cleopatra, rather than Antony, he had prevented many from opposing him, and he now gave out that he had burned the papers and letters of Antony, without

having read them, so that none might fear that their correspondence had betrayed them.

3. By gifts to the people, and by splendid shows and spectacles, he endeavoured to make the citizens forget his former cruelty. A temple which had been built to Minerva, was now dedicated with many magnificent coremonies. New games were instituted, and the people were amused with the mimic battles of gladiators, and the fights of wild beasts.

4. In the person of Octavius were now united the offices of consul, censor, and tribune of the people. All these offices were, however, temporary in their nature, and he determined, to take measures to render his power permanent. The fate of Julius Cæsar warned him that the Romans would not suffer an open usurpation of kingly power. He, therefore, with his usual art, endeavoured to obtain by the consent of the people what he could not hope to retain without it.

5. His first step was to secure a majority of the senate to his purpose. Under various pretences, he removed some, from whom he had reason to fear opposition, and supplied their places with others, whose interest he made it to favor his views. Having then placed things in a proper train, he made a show of formally resigning all the power which he held in the empire.

6. Instead, however, of accepting his resignation, the senators of his own party besought him not to forsake the commonwealth, and entreated him to accept the government in such a formal manner as would ensure his continuing to hold it. This he refused to do, but pretended reluctantly to consent to administer some part of the government for a limited period, and to retain the com-

children ?

TIBERIUS. 790.

stened to sypt. He monarchy, nent. Inawaited in e to share

he capacity exercise of e of power. secure the ing the late he had preave out that ay, without

mand of the army for ten years. This ceremony of resigning and receiving the supreme power, was gone through at the close of every ten years, during his long reign.

v

5

b

C

0

de

er

an

his

Hi

an

ma

sho

ere

to

rec

him

and

Say

ed

he

sion

as t

Tib

soci

nor

7. The senate, in return for his accepting the government, proceeded to distinguish his person by honorary decrees. The name by which he was to be henceforth known, was taken into serious consideration, some proposed Romulus, but Augustus was at last decided upon. It was further decreed that his palace should always be hung with laurel, the badge of victory, and with wreaths of oak, the usual distinction permitted to those who had saved the life of a Roman.

8. The early part of his career had been disgraced by many acts of cruelty, either under pretence of revenging the death of his uncle, or of providing for the security of the state. But after the firm establishment of his power, his character seems to have undergone a change. Many instances of his moderation are given. He is said twice to have pardoned Cornelius Cunna, the grandson of Pompey, for attempting his life, and at last entirely disarmed his hereditary enemy of his resentment, by giving him the consulship, and soliciting his friendship.

9. The attention and encouragement which he bestowed upon literature, has made his name proverbial in the history of letters. He restrained the excesses of the soldiers, and displayed great judgment in his choice of officers for all departments of state. During his long reign the empire generally enjoyed great prosperity; and it is probable that the Romans were happier under his absolute sway, than they could have made themselves with the enjoyment of greater liberty.

10. Augustus, though prosperous in the affairs of the

r of rehrough m. governonorary nceforth propospon. It is be hung is of oak, saved the

raced by revenging ecurity of his power, e. Many id twice to f Pompey, armed his g him the

he bestowbial in the of the sol-. bice of offilong reign ; and it is or his absoves with the

affairs of the

empire, had many trials of a domestic nature. Perhaps the most painful of these was the shameful conduct of his daughter Julia, his only child, on account of which she was at last banished to the small island of Pandataria. Soon after occured the death of her two sons. They had been adopted into the family of Augustus, by the name of Cæsar, and had for some time been at the head, the one of the army in Spain, the other in Syria. After their death, Augustus adopted Tiberius, the eldest son of the empress Livia, by a former mariage.

11. Augustus died in the seventy-fourth year of his age, and the forty-second of his reign, leaving two-thirds of his estate to Tiberius, and the remaining third to Livia. His death caused great sorrow throughout the empire, and his funeral obsequies were performed with the utmost magnificence. It was decreed that the Roman women should wear mourning for him for a year. Temples were crected to his memory, and one Numerius Atticus, willing to make the adulation of the people profitable to himself, received a large sum of money for declaring that he saw him ascending into heaven. In the 752nd. year of Rome, and in the thirtieth year of the reign of Augustus, our Saviour was born in Judea.

12. Augustus had to the last moment of his life affected to hold sovereignty by a mere temporary appointment; he could not, therefore, consistently with his own professions, either name a successor, or dispose of the empire, as the inheritance of his family. After his death, however, Tiberius, his adopted son, who had for some time been associated with him in the government, assumed it entirely, nor did his right seem to be disputed.

13. Tiberius was at this time fifty-six years of age.

HINTORY OF NORE.

He is described as being is person, tail, robust, and healthy, with a large eye, and a handsome countenance, but his natural temper was suspicious, and his manners ungracious. He was never a favorite with Augustus, but through the intrigues of his mother Livia, he was induced to leave him in the pomession of the empire.

14. Though Tiberius met with no opposition at Rome, this was not the case in the provinces. The army ware by no means satisfied with the subordinate position they had for some time occupied, and they took this opportunity to express there dissatisfaction.

14

14

pe

cu

ex As the fou

-7 -1

vie wa

put

per

• 15. At the head of that part of the army occupying the German provinces, was Germanicus Casar, the grandson of Livia, by her younger son Drusus. He had been adopted into the family of Tiberius, at the request of Augustus, and was married to Agrippina, the daughter of Agrippa, and Julia, the daughter of Augustus. He was the idol of the soldiers, and would probably have had little difficulty through their means in obtaining the empire. He, however, rejected their offers to this effect with indiguation, and with great effort succeeded in quieting the disturbances that arose among them.

16. On one occasion the soldiers stationed on the upper Rhine, assembled in a riotous manner round the quarters of their general, and as a signal that they no longer intended to act under his authority, tore down the imperial standard. Germanicus, no longer thinking the camp a place of safety, determined to send Agrippina and her infant son away from it. The soldiers, seeing her about to depart, were struck with this effect of their violence, and besought their general to spare the legions so cruel a mproach, as was implied in his supposing that the wife of

HINTORY OF BOHR.

Ginmanicus, the daughter of Agrippe, and the granddaughter of Augustus, with her infant son, were not safe near their quarters. Germanicus, observing the disposition of the soldiers, sensed the opportunity of regaining his authority; and making it a condition of their return to obsdience, complied with their request.

ni the

cionis .

the the

re him

Rome.

WIND

n they

rtugity

TENGOT:

ing the

randien

d been

uest of

ghter of

was the

and little

re. He.

indigna-

the dis-

- States

the upper

quarters

bagerisa-

imperial

gamp#a

nd her in-

about to

ence, and

ruci a m-

a wife of

17. Tiberius, jealous alike of the influence of Germanicus with the soldiers, and of his popularity with the people, determined to recall him from the German provinces, and place him in circumstances where he would have less cause to fear his power. Under pretence of enjoying a triumph he was, therefore, recalled to Rome; and soon after sent to quiet the disturbances which had arisen in Ame.

18. In order, however, to restrain his power, and compass his ruin, Cneius Piso, a man in every way fit to execute the base purpose of Tiberius, was sent as governor into Syria. Germanicus gave little heed to the efforts unde by Piso to injure his character, but proceeded to execute the commission on which he had been sent to Asia. He then proceeded to Egypt. On his return from thence, he was taken ill, and died at Antioch, in the thirtyfourth year of his age.

19. Agripping immediately returned with her children, and the sches of her busband, to Rome, declaring her conviction that he had been murdered by Piso. A prosecution was instituted against Piso by the sense, but his death put a stop to the proceedings. Some believed that he periched by his own hand, others, by the order of the emperor, to prevent revelations which might have implicated the latter in the orime of which Piso was accused. 20. After the death of Germanicus, Tiberius being no

longer fearful of a rival, began to appear in his true character. He withdrew himself from intercourse with soclety, and took little pains to engage the affections of the people. He selected as a fit instrument of his power, one Sejanus, a man who with the affectation of great modesty, possessed a bold spirit, and insatiable ambition. He was artful and designing: cruel and insolent to those who were in his power, but fawning where he was the inferior, or where he had any interest to gam.

21. Upon this man Tiberius seemed to bestow all his confidence. Under various pretences, he frequently absented himself for long periods from Rome, and at length took up his residence in the island of Caprea. Here his jealousy and suspicion seemed to ripen into a general hatred of mankind, until at last he declined the attendance of those who came to pay court, and was accessible only to his favorite minister.

d

e

tı

tł

ba

ex

T

Ca

gu

jo

ali

ha

en

an

ap

thr

ha

br

22. Among those who had suffered most eruelly from the jealousy of the tyrant were the family of Germanicus. Not daring at first to proceed openly against them, he ordered the execution of some of the friends of Agrippina. Spies being then placed about the family, they were entrapped into strong expressions of indignation against the tyrant. This was sufficient guilt in his eyes. Agrippina was banished to the island of Pandataria, where her unfortunate mother had so long resided. Her eldest son was banished to another island, and her second confined in prison. All either perished by the executioner, or by their own hands, urged to despair by the indignities they were made to suffer.

23. In the meantime, Sejanus, though apparently high in the estimation of his master, was about to share the

fate he had procured for so many. Tiberius, either from his usual duplicity, or fearing the soldiers under his command, treated Sejanus until the last moment with apparent confidence. He intimated to him his intention to invest him with the office of tribune of the people, which would render his person sacred, and at the same time sent to the solute accusing him of treason.

tions

f his

to no

e am-

solent

re he

in inite

all bis

tly ab-

length

lere his

general

endance

ble only

ly from

manicus.

he order-

a. Spies

ntrapped

e tyrant.

was ban-

fortunate

banished

son: All

their own

they were

Tin All of the

ently high

share the

24. Those who in the time of his prosperity had been eager to court his favor, now forsook him. The senate without any specific charge or evidence against him, condemned him to death, and the sentence was immediately executed. His dead body, as was usual in the case of treason, being made fast to a hook, was dragged through the streets, and then cast into the river. His children, a boy and girl, though the young to partake his guilt, or excite apprehension, shared his fate.

25. The successors of Sejanus in the confidence of Tiberius, were Macro, an officer of high rank, and Caius Caligula, the third son of Germanicus and Agrippina. Caligala was declared the successor of Tiberius, to the great joy of the people, with whom the family of Germanicus had always been popular.

26. Tiberius lived for some time a victim of disease; hated and feared by all; the most miserable wretch in the empire. At length, in the twenty-second year of his reign, and the seventy-eighth of his age, he began to feel his end approaching. He was seized with fainting fits, which threatened to prove fatal.

27. He was at last supposed to be dead, and Caligula had caused himself to be proclaimed emperor, and was receiving the congratulations of his friends, when a servant brought tidings that Tiberius had revived. The company

TOR'S OF BOOKS

distely dispersed, and Caligula saw with terror the ruin which threatened him ; but Macro, who retained his presence of mind, put as end to their fears, by gathering up the coverlet on the face of Tiberius, till he was sufficiented." A. D. 37 .--- Year of Rome 790.

Questions on Chapter Seventeen.

- 1. What did Octavius hasten to do ?
- Where did he pass the winter ?
- 2. What is said of Octavius ?
- How did he secure the support of the friends of Antony ?
- 3. How did he seek to make the people forget their former crusities 1

780

emp

best

pect

and

Posit

besto still

to the

had a

pile,

Teye

nde

3.

2.

- 4. What offices were united in the person of Octavius ? What did he determine 1
 - What of the death of Julius Cesar 7
- 5. What was his first step ? How did he do this ? What did he then make a show of ?
- 6. Did the senate accept his resignation ? What did they entreat ? What did Octavius do ?
- 7. What did the senate then take into consideration ? What did they further decree 1
- 8. What is said of the first part of Octavius' career ? What change took place in his character ? What is said of Cornelius Cinna ?.
- 9. What is said of his encouragement of literature ? What of the restraint placed on the soldiers ? What of the empire
- generally ? 10. What is said of the domestic trials of Augustus ?
- What of the sons of Julia ? Who did he then adopt ? 11. What was the age of Augustus when he died ? How long did he reign ? What is said of his death ? What of Numerius Atticus 7
 - When was our Saviour born ?
- 12. What had Augustus affected to do ? Who succeeded him 1
- 13. What is said of Tiberius ?
- 14. What is said of the army ?
- 15. What is said of Germanicus 1
- 16. Give an account of what happened on one occasion.
- 17. What is said of Tiberius ? Under what preises was Ger-manicus recalled ? Where was he sent ? 18. What is said of Piso ? Where did Germanicus die ?
- 19. What is said of Agrippina ? What of Piso ?

20. What is said of Tiberius after the death of Germanicus ? Whom did he select as a fit instrument of his power ? What is said of Sejanes ? 21. Where did Tiberius take up his residence ? What is said of him here ?

ny 1 r former

What of

be empire

17 111

Wes Ger 1 10 100 000

- 22. Who suffered cruelly from the tyrant ?
- What was the fate of Agripping and her two sons ? 23. What of Sejanus in the meantime ? 24. What did the senate do ? What of his dead body ?
- Who shared his fate 1
- 25. Who succedded Sejanus in the confidence of Tiberius ?
- 26. Who was proclaimed the successor of Tiberius ? 27. What did Caligula do t What tidings were brought ? What did Maero do !

CHAPTER XVIII.

FROM THE DEATH OF TIBERIUS, TO THE DEATH OF NERO. A. D. 37 TO 68. - YEAR OF BOME 790 TO 821.

1. The succession of Caligula to the government of the empire, was hailed by the people with extreme joy ... They bestowed upon him every appellation of fondness and respect. He was called their Propitious Star, the child and nursling of the Roman people.

2. For a time he appeared to be worthy of the high position he had attained, and the confidence and esteem bestowed upon him. By a great display of filial piety, he still further won the admiration of the people. Hastening to the island of Pandataria, where his unfortunate mother had so long languished, he raked up the ashes of her funeral pile, embraced her remains, and ordered them to be conveyed with great pomp to Rome.

3. But the hopes of peace and prosperity were soon destined to be crushed. There was not, either in the . inderstanding or disposition of Caligula, the permanent

foundation of a good or great character, and his personal vices soon began to manifest themselves.

4. He plunged into the lowest depths of debauchery and dissipation. He spent whole days and nights in the theatres, witnessing the fights of gladiators and wild beasts. He is even said to have fed the people in the theatres, that their departure to their meals might not interrupt the scenes.

5. Soon becoming weary of the excitement thus obtained, he proceeded to further excesses. He built a temple to himself, and exacted homage as a god. He caused the heads to be struck from the statues of Jupiter and other gods, and had them replaced with his own. He even went so far as to insist that his statue should be placed in the temple at Jerusalem; but the Jews boldly resisted such sacrilege. His priests were numerous, and the sacrifices offered to him were the most exquisite delicacies that could be procured.

I

E

p

fa

sh

as vie sh

co

an

£7

at

6. His prodigalities were unbounded. Besides making use of the ordinary revenues of the empire, he squandered within one year a saving of twenty two millions sterling, left in the treasury by Tiberius. The luxuries of his table were of immense value; it was even said that rare jewels were dissolved in his sauces. In the bath, the most precious oils and perfumes were lavished with the utmost profusion.

7. Some idea of his domestic extravagance may be had, from the way in which he treated his favorite horse, Incitatus. He built him a stable of marble, with a manger of ivory; and every night before he was to appear in the race, placed sentinels about him, lest his slumbers abould be broken. He often swore by "the safety of his horse," and it is even said that he intended to appoint him to the consulship, had not his death prevented.

personal

bauchery hts in the ild beasts. tres, that rrupt the

t thus oble built a god. He of Jupiter own. He he placed ly resisted s, and the e delicacies

ides making squandered ons sterling, of his table rare jewels ost precious st profusionmay be had, orse, Incitaa manger of pear in the bers should of his horse," t him to the 8. It would have been well, however, had such follies alone occupied him, but his cruelties surpassed even his folly and extravagance. He fed his wild beasts with the bodies of the wretches he condemned, and even devoted to the same purpose many old and infirm men, saying it was well to free the state from such useless citizens. He took delight in killing men with slow tortures, and was always present at the executions. On one occasion, being incensed with the citizens, he wished that all the Roman people had but one neck, that he might dispatch them at a blow.

9. In the last year of his reign, he caused numerous levies to be made, and undertook an expedition against the Britons and Germans. The extent of his exploits in Britain, was the giving refuge to one of their banished princes; and this he described in his letter to the senate, as taking possession of the whole island.

10. His intended conquest of Germany, ended in a farce more ridiculous still. He led his army to the sea shore in Gaul, and drawing up his men in battle array, he commanded the trumpets to sound, and a signal to be given, as if for an engagement; when the soldiers, being previously instructed, began to gather the shells from the shore into their helmets. Then calling them together, he congratulated them on their success, and distributing money among them, dismissed them with orders to be joyful.

11. Cassius Chœreas, a tribune of the Prætorian bands, at last determined to rid the world of such a monster. He made known his intentions to some of his friends, and it was agreed to attack him during the Palatine games, and to choose a moment when he could not be defended by his guards. These games lasted four days, and three of them

passed over without presenting a favorable opportunity to the conspirators.

12. Choreas, exasperated at the delay, and fearful that their intentions might become known, could scarcely be prevented from attacking him in the midst of his guards. At length one of the conspirators persuaded Caligula to go to the bath and take some refreshment, that he might the more enjoy the rest of the entertainment.

P

B

in

th

up

th

in :

de

by.

to]

isla

king

yea

last

beca

of hi

whic

salin

crim

hin h

WAR

DATT

famil

20

...

1

13. On his way to the bath, in one of the narrow passages of the palace, he was met by Chœreas, who exclaiming "Tyrant think on this," struck him to the earth with his dagger. The other conspirators closed in upon him, and he was soon killed, having received thirty wounds. Thus died Caius Caligula, in the twenty-ninth year of his age, and in the fourth year of his reign, A. D. 41.—Year of Rome 794.

14. For a few hours after the death of Caligula, the senate flattered themselves with the belief that the government had devolved upon them; and Chœreas fondly thought to restore the republic. But the Prætorian bands, that part of the army immediately about the person of the emperor, decided the matter. A few soldiers seized upon Claudius, the brother of Germanicus, and the uncle of Caligula, and immediately declared him emperor.

15. His near relation to the family of the Czesars, seemed to point him out as a fit person to assume the government, but he was by no means capable of a judicious exercise of power. The complicated diseases of his infancy, had affected his mind as well as his body. It is said that his own mother never acdressed him without a term of contempt.

16. His reign, however, commenced with an appearance of wisdom and moderation. All the cruel edicts of Caligula

ful that

s guards. ligula to he might

exclaime h with his him, and s. Thus of his age, -Year of

igula, the he governily thought ands, that on of the eized upon e uncle of or. he Cæsars, assume the f a judicious ases of his body. It is m without a

appearance .

State of

were disannulled. He showed himself more moderate than his predecessors had been with regard to titles and honors. He was assiduous in hearing and examining complaints, and frequently administered justice in his own person with great mildness.

17. During his reign, the war was again carried into Britain; and the successes of Plautius, the Roman general, induced Claudius to go thither in person, under pretence that the natives were still seditious, and had not delivered up all the Roman fugitives that had taken refuge among them. The sixteen days that he spent there, were passed in receiving homage, but the senate on his return to Rome decreed to him a splendid triumph.

18. In the meantime, the war was vigorously carried on by Plautius, and his lieutenant Vespasian, who is said to have fought thirty battles, and reduced a part of the island to the form of a Roman province. Caractacus, king of the Silures, or inhabitants of South Wales, for nine years successfully resisted the Roman arms. He was at last subdued by Ostorius, and carried in triumph to Rome.

19. Claudius, never able to govern by himself, soon became the mere tool of others. Through the influence of his wife Messalina, he was led to commit many cruelties, which he believed to be only wholesome severities. Messalina was soon justly put to death on account of her crimes; and Claudius married Agrippina, the daughter of his brother Germanicus. Her only motive in marrying, was to procure the succession to Nero, her son by a former marriage, and she persuaded Claudius to adopt him into his family.

20. For a long time the fear of discovery alone prevented her from putting an end to the life of the emperor.

At length she determined to make use of a poison that would destroy his intellect without at once killing him. She administered it in mushrooms, a dish of which he was particularly fond. Soon after partaking of it, he fell down insensible. This, however, excited no alarm, as it was usual for him to eat till he had stupified his faculties. On being carried to bed, he soon revived, but Agrippina directed her physician to introduce a poisoned feather into his throat, under pretence of making him vomit. This had the effect intended. A. D. 54.—Year of Rome 807.

. 21. Nero succeeded to the empire at the age of seventeen, and for a time appeared liberal, just, and humane. His mother who, when not misled by passion, was a woman of good judgment, procured for him the tutorship of Burrhus and Seneca, and as long as he acted as the former suggested, and spoke as the latter dictated, he appeared to be a prodigy of wisdom and moderation.

- 6

0

te

á

ŕ

M fa de w is

th

: 85

m

22. His natural disposition, however, soon began to appear. The first alarming instance which he gave of his cruelty, was the execution of his mother. He first attempted to drown her. He had a vessel so constructed that, by removing several bolts, it would separate in the open sea, with all the appearance of a shipwreck.

23. Agrippina, naturally suspicious, at first refused to go on board, but was at last induced to do so. The attempt failed. The sea being calm, she floated till she was taken up by some fishermen, who conveyed her to her own palace. She dissembled her suspicions, and apprised Nero of her wonderful escape. She was soon after put to death by his order.

24. He now went to the utmost bounds of folly and inhumanity. Having a talent for music, he became, or

believed himself to be, a distinguished performer, and frequently exhibited his skill in the public theatre. Three years after the death of his mother, he ordered the execution of his tutor, Burrhus; also of his wife Octavia, a young princess of rare virtue and beauty, that he might marry Poppæa, a Jewess of extraordinary beauty, but of infamous character.

25. Most historians ascribe to him a conflagration which occurred at this time in Rome. Persons who were seen setting fire to different parts of the city, alleged that they did so by the emperor's orders. It is said, that standing upon a high tower, he watched the progress of the flames, singing in a theatrical manner to his harp, verses on the burning of Troy. He afterwards used every art to throw the odium of so detestable an act from himself, and fix it upon the Christians, who were at that time rapidly increasing in Rome.

26. A fearful persecution of the Christians followed. Many were crucified; others burned alive. Some were fastened into the skins of wild beasts, and in this disguise devoured by the dogs. Others were made to fight with wild beasts in the theatre, a spectacle to the people. It is supposed that the apostles, Paul and Peter, perished in this persecution. Faul was beheaded; Peter crucified with his head downward, a manner of death which he chose as being more dishonorable than that of his Divine Master. 27. A conspiracy was formed against Nero, by Piso, a man of great power and integrity. It was, however, prematurely discovered; and many of the principal inhabitants of Rome fell victims to the suspicions of the tyrant. The two most remarkable persons who perished on this occasion, were Seneca, the philosopher, and Lucan, the poet,

son that ing him. h he was , he fell arm, as it faculties. Agrippina ather into This had

807. e of sevend humane. as a woman utorship of cted as the lictated, he ration.

n began to he gave of r. He first constructed arate in the eck. it refused to o. The atbated till she ed her to her and apprised oon after put

of folly and became, or

his nephew. Their death was followed by that of some of the chief people of Rome; nor did the empress Poppera herself escape.

28. At length Servius Galba, at that time governor of Spain, a man remarkable for his wisdom in peace, and his courage in war, determined to free his country from the tyrant. As soon as Nero heard that Galba had declared against him, he was struck with terror, and went from house to house in person, to assemble the people; but the doors were shut against him.

29. Driven to a state of desperation, he besought one of his favorite gladiators to kill him. This request being refused, "Alas," he cried, " have I neither friend nor foe?" He then rushed into the streets, intending to throw himself into the Tiber, but his courage failed and he returned. He then took refuge in the villa of his freedman Phaon, a few miles from Rome. While here, he was informed that Galba had been declared emperor, and that he himself was condemned by the senate to die according to the ancient rigor of the law.

1(

11

13

14

15.

16.

17. 18.

19.

20.

21.

22. 23

24.

25.

26.

28. 29.

30.

30. On asking what this meant, he was informed, that it was to be stripped naked, his head fixed in the pillory, and in that posture to be scourged to death. Nero, terrified at the prospect of such a death, seized a dagger; as if to kill himself, but his courage failed, and he returned it to its sheath. He then besought one of his attendants to die, that by his example he might gain courage. Then reproaching himself for his cowardice, he cried out "Deea this become Nero? Is this trifling well-timed? No I--let me be courageous," and once more putting the dagger to his throat, with the assistance of Epaphroditus, his freedman and secretary, he gave himself a mertal would. A. D. 68.-Year of Rome 821.

121

He reigned thirteen years, seven months and twentyeight days, and died in the thirty-second year of his age.

Questions on Chapter Eighteen.

- 1. How was the accession of Caligula hailed ?
- 2. How did he appear for a time ? What is said of his filial piety ?
- 3. What is said of the character of Caliguia ?
- 4. What did he do ? Where did he spend days and nights ?
- 5. To what further excesses did he proceed ?
- 6. What is said of his prodigalities ?
 - What of the luxuries of his table ? What of the bath ?
- 7. Describe his treatment of his horse.
- 8. What is said of his cruelties ? How did he feed his wild beasts ?
- In what did he take delight ? What did he once with ?
- 9. What did he undertake in the last year of his reign ? What is said of his exploits in Britain ?
- 10. What of his intended conquest of Germany ?
- 11. What of Cassius Charens ? What time was chosen ? 12. What is said of the delay ?
- 13. Describe the manner of his death.
- What was his age, and how long did he reign ? 14. What did the Senate suppose ? What of Charcas ? Who was declared emperor ?
- 15. What is said of Claudius ?
- 16. How did his reign commence ?
- 17. What induced Claudius to go to Britain ?
- 18. What of Plautins and Vespasian in the mean time ? What of Caractacus ?
- 19. What did Claudius now become ?
- What is said of Messalina ? What of Agrippina ? 20. What did Agrippina determine ?
- What is said of Claudius ? Describe his death.
- 21. Who succeeded to the empire ?
- What is said of his mother ?
- 22. What was the first instance of his cruelty?
- 23. Did he succeed ?
- 24. What did he now do? What is said of his talent for music ? What of Burrhus and Octavia ?
- 25. What do most historians ascribe to him ?
 - Upon whom did he afterwards endeavour to fix the blame ?
- 26. What is said of the persecution that followed?
- 27. What conspiracy was formed ?
- Who perished on account of this ?
- 28. What is said of Galba ? What of Nero ?
- 29; Where did he take refuge ? How was he condemned to die ?. 30. Syw did this affect him ? Describe his death. What was his. age 1 How long had he reigned.

Popp

erpor of , and his from the declared est from but the

ught one est being nor foe ?" w himself returned. Phaon, a informed t he him-

ing to the

med, that e pillory, Nero, teragger; as eturned it endants to Then e." but " Deca No -

the dagger

oditus, bie

tal would

CHAPTER XIX.

FROM THE DEATH OF NERO, TO THE DEATH OF DOMITIAN. A. D. 58 TO 96,--YEAR OF ROME 821 TO 849.

1. Galba was seventy-two years of age when he was proclaimed emperor. Had his reign received its character from his own virtues, it might have been an era of great prosperity for the empire; but being in the most part guided by favorites, the variety of their counsels gave an air of inconsistency to his acts. At one time he showed himself severe and frugal, and at another remiss and prodigal. He condemned some illustrious persons without a hearing, and pardoned others who were guilty. Many discontents arose in consequence.

2. Galba at last resolved to adopt as his successor some person whose virtues might command the respect of the people, and protect his declining years from danger. Resolved in this matter to consult only the public good, he gave little heed to the contentions that arose among his favorites. He therefore chose one Piso Lucinianus, a young man highly deserving of the distinction. Although little ambitious to attain to the dignity of Emperor, his moderation and firmness served to point him out as one capable of performing well his duty to the state.

3. His virtues, however, were no recommendation in a time of universal depravity, and his adoption was received coldly by the senate and the army. Otho, who had long been a favorite with Galba, fully expected to be chosen as his successor. Enraged by his disappointment, and stimulated by the pressure of debts into which his follies had led him, he determined to obtain the empire by force. 80

re.

slo

4. Having previously corrupted the fidelity of the army, be seized an opportunity when Galba was engaged in sa-

crificing, to assemble and address them. The soldiers, ripe for sedition, received him with acclamations, and taking him on their shoulders, immediately proclaimed him emperor. Galba, being deserted by his friends, determined to meet death with composure. As the soldiers approached with drawn swords, he bent his head forward, calmly desiring them to strike it off, if it were for the good of the people. He was quickly obeyed. His short reign of seven months was as illustrious by his virtues, as it was dishonoured by the vices of the favorites that fell with him. 5. Otho's triumph was, however, of short duration. He was obliged inmediately to leave Rome, to oppose the army of the Upper Rhine, who had declared Vitellius, their general, emperor, and were advancing towards Italy. In the first engagements that took place, Otho had the advantage, but having at last been defeated, he lost courage, and killed himself, after a short reign of three months and five days.

6. Vitellius was at once declared emperor by the senate. He entered Rome, less as a place that he intended to govern in justice, than as a town that he had conquered with his arms. Accustomed from his youth to luxury, he soon gave himself up to all kinds of dissipation, but gluttony was his favorite vice. He invited himself to the tables of his subjects, in the same day breakfasting with one, dining with another, and supping with a third. By such vices and by enormous cruelties, he soon became a burden to himrelf and hateful to the people; and the legions in the east unanimously resolved to declare their general, Vespasian, emperor.

7. Vitellius, though apparently given up to luxury and sloth, resolved to make an effort to defend the empire.

าร ปัตร MITIA¥.

he was naracter of great ost part gave an showed and provithout a Many

SUCCESSOF espect of danger. lic good, se among inianus, a Although peror, his but as one SOU TEN lation in a received b had long chosen as and stimuollies had force. TESS the army, ged in sa-

His generals met the army of Vespasian, commanded by Antonius Primus, near Cremona. A battle ensued, in which the generals of Vitellius were defeated, with the loss of thirty thousand men.

8. In the mean time, Vitellius offered to resign the empire to Vespasian, on condition that his life might be spared, and a sufficient revenue allotted for his support. But being still encouraged by some of his friends to resist, he again resolved to defend himself. Sabinus, a senator, determined to make a bold strike in favor of Vespasian. seized the capitol. He was, however, attacked by the soldiers of Vitellius, and, in the struggle, the capitol itself was burned to ashes.

P

t

ti

C

C

W

de

te

ci

m

we

ing

op

str

28

Bu

Ga

5

the

tà

app

9. After the battle of Cremona, Antonius advanced to Rome. The city was defended with great bravery by the party of Vitellius. They sallied out or the besiegers, but were driven back into the streets with great slaughter. The battle lasted all day, and at its close the army of Vespasian were masters of Rome.

10. Vitellius, on being found by the soldiers, manifested great fear of death. Pretending that he had secrets of importance to disclose, he begged to be kept in prison until the arrival of Vespasian. His entreaties were, however, vain. His hands were tied behind him, a halter placed about his neck, and he was led half naked into the forum. Here, after loading him with reproaches and abuse, the soldiers put him to death with blows, and dragging his body through the streets, threw it into the Tiber.

11. Vespasian was now declared emperor, with the unanimous consent of the senate and the army. He was not of an illustrious family; and had been accused of stooping to flattery and servility, in order to ingratiate.

himself with men in power. Yet, as a general, he was highly respected and of unquestioned courage. Disdaining to court his soldiers by largesses, he proved to the world that he owed his good fortune to merit alone.

12. His accession to the empire was hailed by the people with joy. Nor did he in the least dis ppoint their expectations. He displayed no enmity against his adversaries, but rewarded merit wherever it appeared, without regard to parties. He improved the manners of the people, and set them the best example in his own person.

13. Meanwhile Titus, the son of Vespasian, conducted the war against the Jews. He invested Jerusalem at a time when the inhabitants of Judea were assembled to celebrate the feast of the passover in that city. With a courage excited and sustained by the belief that Jehovah would not forsake his own chosen dwelling place, this devoted people prepared to defend their beloved city and temple.

14: The accumulated horrors of famine, pestilence, and civil war were insufficient to subdue them. It is said that many supernatural warnings of their approaching ruin were given. There was the appearance of armies meeting in the heavens. The eastern gates of the temple flew open of their own accord, and refused to yield to the strength of man to close them; while a voice was heard as from the Holy of Holies, saying, "Let us depart." But still they refused to believe themselves forsaken of God,

15. Even when Titus had broken down the third wall, their last defence, multitudes betook themselves to the temple, believing that God would then, at the last moment; appear in their behalf: But they waited in vain. The

nded by sued, in the loss

sign the night be support. to resist, senator, espasian. cked by e capitol

vanced to ry by the egers, but slaughter. army of

manifested secrets of prison until , however, iter placed the forum abuse, the agging his ar. with the He was accused of ingratiate

measure of their iniquity was filled. The word had gone forth against Jerusalem. Zion " beautiful for situation the joy of the whole earth," was to become a ruin.

8

g

I

3

al

fr

0

ćÌ

H

pr

sh

ex

the

vic

the

for

ma

the

sol

bin

del

dö

On

the

TOV

Ve

ma

PIX CO

16. Titus strove in vain to save the temple; a brand was thrown by a soldier into an adjacent building, and the fire communicating with it, it was soon enveloped in flames. Many of the Jews, driven to despair by this failure of their last hope, and willing rather to perish with their temple than to survive its ruin, threw themselves headlong into the flames; and thus, "the glorious and beautiful house which their fathers loved," became their funeral pile.

• 17. Some of the most resolute still attempted to defend Zion, the upper and stronger part of the city; but it could not long withstand the powerful engines of the Romans, and Titus soon became master of the place. The words of Prophetic Scripture were literally fulfilled. Jerusalem became a desolation. Zion was ploughed as a field, and of the temple there remained not one stone upon another that was not thrown down.

18. Never, before nor since, was a seige attended with such fearful suffering and loss of hie. It is supposed that from famine, pestilence, or the sword, more than a million perished, and more than one hundred thousand were carried captives into other lands. Of these, twelve thousand were employed in the erection of the magnificent amphitheatre, called the Coliseum, built in the reign of Vespasian, in Rome.

19. Titus refused the title of imperator, which his soldiers would have bestowed on him at the fall of Jerusalem; but, in company with his father, he enjoyed a magnificent triumph on his return to Rome. Among the rich

d gone tionbrand and the flames. lure of ir temeadlong eautiful funeral

o defend it could Romans, ne words Jerusais a field, ne upon

ded with osed that a million nd were lve thouagnificent reign of

which his of Jerusad a magg the rich spoils displayed on the occasion, were vast quantities of gold taken from the temple, and the Book of the Holy Law. A triumphal arch was erected, on which were inscribed the victories of Titus over the Jews. It remains almost entire to this day.

20. Few emperors have received a better character from historians than has Vespasian; yet his numerous acts of generosity and munificence could not preserve his character from the imputation of rapacity and avarice. He enjoyed a reign of ten years. Finding his end approaching, he raised himself and cried out " an emperor should die standing," and turning himself on his feet, expired in the arms of his attendants. A. D. 79.

21. Titus was joyfully hailed emperor. Although during the life of his father, he was accused of indulging in many vices, never during his short reign could any imputations of the kind be brought against him. False witnesses, informers, and licentious persons, he punished severely, commanding them to be first scourged in the public streets, and then banished to an uninhabited part of the empire, or sold as slaves.

22. His moderation, justice, and generosity procured for him the love of all good men; and the appellation of " the delight of mankind." His courtesy and his readiness to do good have been celebrated even by Christian writers. One night, remembering that he had done nothing during the day for the benefit of mankind, he exclaimed in sorrow, "I have lost a day."

23. During his reign occurred the eruption of Mount Vesuvius, which overwhelmed Herculaneum, Pompeii, and many other towns. These towns, after having been for sixteen hundred years buried under the lava, were discovered near the beginning of the last century.

24. On account of the success of his general, Agricols, in Britain, Titus was for the fifteenth time saluted Imperator; but, being seized with a violent fever at a little distance from Rome, he did not long survive the honor. His death is supposed to have been hastened by the treachery of his brother Domitian, who had long desired to reign. He died in the forty-first year. of his age, having reigned two years, two months, and twenty days. A. D. S1.

25. As had been the case with most of those who had disgraced the name of emperor with their follies and vices, Domitian commenced his reign with a display of elemency, liberality, and justice. The rejoiding of the people on this account was, however, of short duration. Instead of cultivating literature, as his father and brother had done, he neglected all kinds of study, and even banished the philosophers and mathematicians from Rome.

26. He instituted three sorts of games, to be celebrated every five years, in music, horsemanship, and wrestling. No previous emperor had entertained the people with such various and expensives shows. He distributed rewards to the victors in the different games, sitting as president, wearing the imperial robes and crown.

27. The meanness of his occupations in solitude, was, a disgusting contrast to his ostentatious displays abroad. It is said that he spent many hours of his retirement in catching flics, and sticking them through with a bodkin. His vices seemed every day to increase, and his ungrateful treatment of his general Agricola afforded a convincing proof of his natural malevolence.

28. He had always been covetous of military fame, and the successes of Agricola in Britain filled him with envy.

W 520 obt poi fron that SOOL that 2 expe barb were by fo and Gern he ha 30 most mit h or g cause to be Ælius thoug 31: knowi strike by the 32. Anton of his pronot

cola,

Im-

little

onor.

r the

esired

ays. .

Better.

vices,

nency,

ple on de lead of

done,

brated

estling.

th such ards to

esident, er

* stor5.4.

, was a di

nent. in

bodkin are

rateful

Antruits

me, and lo

D. CDN Jertel

vincing

age,

While he withheld no outward token of respect, he at the same time determined to prevented future opportunities of obtaining glory. He, therefore, under pretence of appointing him to the government of Spain, recalled him from Britain; but, on arriving at Rome, Agricola found that the government of Spain was given to another. He soon after died in retirement, and it was generally believed that his end was hastened by the orders of Domitian.

29. Domitian soon had cause to regret the loss of so experienced a general. Incursions were made by the barbarians in various parts of the empire, and the Romans were defeated in several engagements. At last, partly by force and partly by money, the barbarians were repelled, and Domitian enjoyed a triumph, and took the name of Germanicus, for his conquests over a people with whom he had never contended.

30. It would be difficult to say which now increased most rapidly, his arrogance or his cruelty. He would permit his statue to be made of no baser material than silver or gold, and assumed to himself divine honors. He caused numbers of the most illustrious senators and others to be put to death, on the most trifling pretences. One Ælius Lama was condemned and executed for jesting, though there neither wit nor poignancy in his jest-

31s. Lucius Antonius, governor of Upper Germany, knowing how Domitian was hated in Rome, determined to strike a blow for the throne. But his army was defeated by the emperor's forces, under his general Normandus.

32. In order to discover those who had favoured Antonius, Domitian invented new tortures. In the midst of his severity, he aggravated his guilt by hypoerisy-never pronouncing a sentence but with a preamble of gentleness.

and mercy. He always witnessed the tortures which he inflicted, and seemed to take pleasure in adding keenness to every agony.

18

19.

20.

21.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27. 28.

29. 30. 31. 32. 33.

diff The load stat obs any the mar 2 the eho

33. But an end was soon put to his cruelties. It was his custom to put down in his tablets the names of all those he intended to destroy. These having one day fallen into the hands of his wife, Domitia, she found her name in the list of the condemned. She showed the list to others, whose names were also there, and a conspiracy. was formed, which ended in the death of the tyrant.

Questions on Chapter Nineteen.

1.	What was the age of Galba ? What is said of his reign ?
	What of his favorites ?
2.	What did he at last resolve to do?
	Whom did he choose ?
3	What is said of the senate and the army ?
	What of Otho ?
·#.	What did he do ? What of the soldiers ?
	What of Galba ? How long did he reign ?
0.	What of the triumph of the? What was his fate ?
6.	Who was declared emperor by the senate ?
	What of the vices of Vitellius ?
	Who was declared emperor by the army of the east ?
7.	What is said of Vitellius ?
	Who were victorious in the battle of Cremona ?
8.	What of Vitellius in the meantime ? What of Sabinus ?
	What of the Capitol ?
9.	After the battle of Cremona what occured ? .
	What was the fate of Vitellius ?
	What is said of Vespasian ? How was he received emperor ?
	What of Titus in the meantime 3.
	When did he invest Jerusalem ?
-9	
	What is said of the courage of the Jews ?
14.	What warnings are they said to have received ?
10.	When the third wall was forced, where did many betake them.
	selves to ?
16.	What of Titus ? What of many of the Jews ?
17.	What did some of them still do ?

What is said of the language of Prophetic Scripture 1 18. What is said of the miseries of the seige 1

How many perished ? How many were taken captive 3

19. What is said of the triumph of Titus ?

20. What is said of the character of Vespasian ?

were What of his death ?

hich he

eenness

It was

of all

one day and her

the list spiracy. ıt.

1 . 2. 130

I lisul

STREES.

11230

Maria Juli

18 13 Bell

ake them-

s i the

21. How was Titus hailed ? What was his character ?

22. What name was given to him ?

- 23. What occured during his reign ?
 24. What is said of his death ? What was his age ?
 25. What is said of the commencement of Domitian's reign ? How were the people disappointed ? 26. What games did he institute ? 27. How did he employ his solitude ? 28. How did he treat his general Agricola ?

29. What cause had he to repent his treatment ? What of his triumph ?

30. What is said of his arrogance and cruelties ?

31. What of Antonius ?

32. What of Domitian's cruelty ?

33. What of his death ?

CHATER XX.

FROM THE DEATH OF DOMITIAN TO THE DEATH OF ADRIAN A. D. 96 TO 138 .- YEAR OF ROME 849 TO 891.

1. The tidings of Domitian's death were received with different feelings by the senate, the people, and the army. The senate manifested the utmost joy, and hastened to load his memory with reproaches. They commanded his statues to be taken down, and decreed that his funeral obsequies should be omitted. The people, now destitute of any share in the government, seemed to care little about the matter. The army, upon whom he had bestowed many favors, alone regretted his death.

2. On the very day upon which the tyrant was slain, the senate hastened to appoint his successor. Their choice fell on Cocceius Nerva, a man of noble family, a

Spaniard by birth. He was sixty-five years of age, and had long been respected on account of his virtues. Desirous to obtain the love rather than to excite the fears of his subjects, his reign was characterized by gentleness and moderation, He enacted several wise laws, abolished many severe taxes, and restored to many the property of which they had been unjustly deprived by Domitian.

3. Upon coming to the throne, he had taken a solemn oath that during his reign no senator should be put to death with his consent. So truly was this oath kept, that he refused to punish any, though guilty of fearful crimes. Two senators having conspired to put him to death, instead of acting against them, he took them with uum to the public theatre, and presenting each of them with a dagger, bade them strike, as he was determined not to defend himself.

4. But the mildness of his disposition, while it won for him the affection of good men, served only to encourage the bad in the commission of further, crimes; and it soon became evident to himself that the reins of government must be held by a firmer hand. He, therefore, adopted Trajan, governor of Upper Germany, into his family, and declared him his colleague and successor. Trajan was in all respects worthy of the confidence reposed in him, and the remainder of Nerva's short reign was passed in comparative peace. He, however, survived the adoption of Trajan only three months. He died at Rome after a short reign of one year, four months, and nine days. He was the first foreign emperor that reigned in Rome, A. D. 93—year of Rome 851.

5. Upon being informed of the death of Nerva, Trajen prepared to return to Rome. Instead of advancing in

th ob WE affi Hi his ing adn had of pay For but Dac on c ledg 8 enjo brou Tra to be

sure,

ama

arch

triumph, as had been the manner of former emperors, he entered the city on foot, attended by the civil officers of state, and followed by his soldiers. On presenting the sword, as was the costume, to the præfect of the prætorian bands, he said, "Take this sword and use it; if I have merit, for me; if otherwise, against me;" and added, that he who gave laws was the first that was bound to observe them.

6. The great qualities of his mind, accompanied as they were by many personal advantages, secured for him the affection and respect of the people over whom he reigned. His application to business, his moderation to his enemies, his modesty in exaltation, and his liberality to the deserving, won alike the esteem of his contemporaries and the admiration of posterity.

7. During the reign of Domitian, peace with the Dacians had been purchased by the annual payment of a large sum of money. This ignominious tribute Trajan refused to pay, and a war with that people was the consequence. For some time Trajan was vigorously opposed by them, but being at length forced into a general battle, the Dacians were utterly defeated, and obliged to accept peace on disadvantageous terms, Decebalus, their king, acknowledging himself a vassal of the Romans.

8. Scarcely, however, was the triumph which Trajan enjoyed on his return to Rome over, when tidings were brought that the Dacians had renewed hostilities, and Trajan marched a second time against them. In order to be better able to invade the enemies' country at pleasure, Trajan built a bridge across the Danube. This amazing structure consisted of more than twenty-two arches, one hundred and fifty feet high, and one hundred

e, and irtues. e fears tleness olished erty of solemn put to t, that crimes. ith, inhim to h with not to

von for ourage it soon rnment dopted y, and y, and in him, sed in loption after a He A. D.

and seventy broad. Its ruins, which remain to this day, show modern architects how far they were surpassed by the ancients in the greatness and boldness of their designs.

t

0

p

st

th

th

cli

fle

H

In

the

he

rec

ent

8 . 6

and

pro

cen

he

tó

tak

yea

117

1.611

emp

by t

ing

fort

mili

hims

did a

the

11/1

9. When the bridge was finished, Trajan pressed the war with great vigor. The Dacians gaining wisdom from their late defeat, would not suffer themselves to be drawn into a battle, but in various ways greatly distressed the Romans. By sharing the fatigues of the compaign, Trajan sustained the courage of his army under severe hardships, and at length the whole country was subdued, and Dacia became a Roman province.

10. Having thus restored peace and prosperity, Trajan continued to reign, beloved and honored by his subjects. He punished vice with the greatest severity, and lost no opportunity of encouraging merit. He was not, however, equally just to all his subjects. Under the sanction of a law which had been enacted, in which all dissent from the established religion was declared to be unlawful, the Christians in all parts of the empire were greatly oppressed. Many were pat to death, as well by popular tumults as by edicts and judicial proceedings. Testimony, however, being borne by Pliny, the proconsul of Bithynia, and others, to the moral and inoffensive lives of the Christians, the persecution ceased.

11. In the mean time, the Armenians and Persians had refused submission to the Romans, and Trajan prepared to lead an army against them. The king of Armenia fied at his approach, and the governors and nobles immediately submitted to Trajan. Still advancing, he conquered Parthia, Syria, and Chaldea, and took the famous city of Babylon.

12. Following the route formerly taken by Alexander

the Great he crossed the Tigris, and advanced to the city of Ctesiphon, which he took, and opened for himself a passage into Persia. Here his conquests were rather splendid than useful. Having reduced the country along the Tigris, he proceeded southward to the Persian gulf.

13. His army being much reduced by the hardships they had endured, and by the unfavorableness of the climate, he with great labour and difficulty fitted out a fleet, and sailing down the gulf, entered the Indian Ocean. Here his couquests were still continued, and a part of the Indies became subject to Rome. Hearing, however, that many of the conquered provinces had again revolted, he resolved, instead of advancing further, to return and reduce them to submission. In this attempt he was entirely successful.

14. Having given monarchs to Parthia and Armenia, and appointed governors and lieutenants in the other provinces, he resolved to return to Rome, where magnificent preparations were being made to receive him. When he had proceeded as far as Cilicia, he found himself unable to advance in the usual manner. He was, therefore, taken by ship to Selucia, where he died, in the sixty-first year of his age, and the nineteenth of his reign. A. D. 117.—Year of Rome 870.

15. Trajan is distinguished as the greatest and the best emperor of Rome. The veneration in which he was held by the Romans, may be known by their manner of blessing future emperors. They always wished for them the fortune of Augustus and the goodness of Trajan. His military virtues, however, on which he chiefly prided himself, were of little value to his country, and his splendid conquests were only available to the Romans during the lifetime of the conqueror.

tby 205. the dom be trescominder Was 15 .1 rajan jects. st no vever, of a mthe I, the reatly opular L'estisul of vessof 11711 hs had epared rmenia nobles ng, he ok the antessel xander

iav.

135

the

he

cal

bro

in i

to

Ro

He

of.

inus

mas

the.

He

hors

kille

mod

he

mee

inve

esca

ation

unw

indig

that

bene

mixt

and

vani

frequ

2

2

16. It is supposed that Adrian owed his elevation to the throne, to the intrigues of Plotina, the wife of Trajan. With the emperor himself he had never been a favorite. He was extravagant in his manner of life, and had contracted many debts. He was, besides, inconstant, capricious, and apt to envy another's reputation; and though his talents and acquirements were of a high order, they were not such as would recommend him to one who being himself devoted to war, wished to be succeeded by a soldier.

17. Plotina concealed the death of the emperor till Adrian had assured himself of the favor of the army. A forged instrument was then produced, which declared Adrian to have been adopted to succeed to the empire, and through this artifice he obtained the throne. His first care was to write to the senate, declining to assume the government without their sanction.

18. The senate immediately decreed him a magnificent triumph. This, however, he modestly declined, desiring that all honors designed for him might be paid to the memory of Trajan. The statue of the deceased emperor, therefore, formed the chief figure in a splendid procession. His ashes were placed in a goiden urn, on a pillar one hundred and forty feet high, on which was engraven the particulars of his exploits in the east. This pillar still remains.

19. The policy adopted by Adrian was an entire contrast to that which had been pursued by his predeces sor: He abandoned all the recent conquests of the Romans, and made the Euphrates the boundary of his dominions in the east. He intended to withdraw the Roman power from those of the European provinces

that were defended with greatest dificulty, but from this he was prevented by the counsel of his friends. He caused the bridge built by Trajan over the Danube to be broken down, as it was of greater use to the barbarians in their incursions on the Roman territories, than it was to the Romans in repelling those incursions.

20. Adrian was by far the most remarkable of the Roman emperors for the variety of his accomplishments. He wrote elegantly both in prose and verse, and was one of the best orators of the day. He was an excellent musician, and in drawing and painting equalled the first masters. His memory was astonishing. He recollected the names of all his soldiers though ever so long absent. He was strong and skilful in the use of arms, both on horseback and on foot, and frequently with his own hands killed wild bears and lions in hunting.

21. Nor was he without marked moral virtues. His moderation was manifested in pardoning the injuries, he had received when a private man. One day, meeting a person who had formerly been his most, inveterate enemy, "my good friend," he said, "you have escaped, for I am made emperor." He had great veneration for the senate, and never permitted the entrance of unworthy persons into it. He relieved the wants of the indigent, and even visited them in sickness, declaring that he was emperor not for his own good but for the benefit of mankind.

22, But these virtues were contrasted by, a strange mixture of vices. He was proud, hasty, and revengeful, and the ruling passions of his soul were curtosity and vanity. Under the influence of these base passions, he frequently committed acts of cruelty and injustice. During

m to njan. orite. concaprinough they who ed by

or till . A clared mpire, His assume

ificent

esiring to the peror, ession. ar one en the ar still

entire deces⁻ of the of his w the pvinces

mo

yea

and

wer

nati

the

Roi

exte

His

time

Luc

cal

rend

desi

his I

as h

fifty

wou

of g

mis

freq

Thi

use

him

of

41.1

. 24

÷.

2

his reign, the persecution of the Christians was renewed, and for some time carried on with great rigor.

23. But whatever might have been his private character as an emperor, it was admirable wisdom and sound policy which characterized all his public acts. The most distant parts of his vast empire commanded his attention and shared his care. 'I aking with him a splended court and a considerable army, he visited Gaul, Germany, Holland, and Britain. While in Britain, he built a wall of earth and wood, extending from the river Eden, in Cumberland, to the Tyne, in Northcumberland, to assist in protecting the inhabitants from the incursions of the Picts and Scots. From Britain, he proceeded through Gaul to Spain, his native country, where he was received with the greatest joy.

24. Having returned to Rome, he prepared to visit the Roman provinces in the east. In Parthia he quelled a rebellion that had arisen, and returned by Athens, where he spent some time. He afterwards proceeded to Africa, where he regulated the government, reformed abuses, and ordered the erection of many magnificent buildings. He caused Carthage to be rebuilt, giving it his own name. Adrianople. In Egypt, he restored the tomb of Pompey, which had fallen into decay.

25. He gave orders for the rebuilding of Jerusalem, and the Jews began to think that the time of their restoration was at hand. Their expectations were, however, sadly disappointed. Adrian not only bestowed many privileges on the Pagan worshippers at Jerusalem, but forbade the Jews to practice many of their religious rites. These things were more than the Jews could bear, and under their leader Barchab; they ran to arms with the

139

most desperate fury. In this war, which lasted several years, three hundred and eighty thous and Jews perished; and those who survived were banished from Judea. Many were sold into slavery, and the great scattering of the nation dates from this time.

26. After spending thirteen years in visiting all parts of the empire, Adrian took up his residence alternately at Rome and Tibur, where he built a palace of so great extent, that its ruins resemble that of a considerable town. His increasing infirmities now admonished him that it was time to think of a successor. His first choice fell on Lucius Verus, a handsome and noble youth. His physical weakness and the effeminacy of his character, however, rendered him wholly unfit for the elevated position designed for him. Fortunately Adrian survived him, and his next choice did honor to his judgement. He adopted as his successor Titus Antoninus, a senator of the age of fifty years, of blameless character, on condition that he would at the same time adopt Marcus Aurelius, a youth of great promise.

27. The last years of the life of Adrian were rendered miserable by his intense bodily sufferings; so that he frequently entreated his attendants to put him to death. This impiety, however, Antoninus would not permit, but used every means to alleviate his sufferings and reconcile him to life. He at length died in the sixty-second year of bis age, after a prosperous reign of twenty-one years. A. D. 138.—Year of Rome 892.

renewed,

ate charind sound The most attention ed court Germany, It a wall Eden, in , to assist ns of the d through received

visit the quelled a as, where to Africa, uses, and ngs. He wn name, Pompey, 19.18 erusalem, ir restorhowever, red many lem, but ious rites.

bear, and

with the

100

24272

bet.

Questions on Chapter Twenticth.

Ga and sta No

vir sec pea of

rou half upp his and ality exp to d indi up a to t 3

ing relig for love

pres thou

	1.	. How was the tidings of Domitian's death received by	the senate 1
		By the people ? By the army ?	
	2.	. Who was chosen as his successor ?	7 0
	-	What is said of Nerva ?	
	3.	What oath did he take ? How did he keep it ?	
	4.	What soon became evident ?	·
		Whom did he adopt ? What is said of Trajan ?	
		What is said of the death of Nerva ?	, °
	5.	How did Trajan enter Rome ?	
	1	What did he say on presenting the sword ?	
		What is said of Trajen ?	1. 2.
	7.	What did Trajan refuse to do ?	
	_	Who were victorious in the war which followed 1	* 2
	8.	Did peace continue long ?	1
		What is said of the bridge over the Danube ?	
	9.	What is said of the Dacians? What of Trajan?	
	10.	What is said of the reign of Trajan ?	
	11.	"What of the persecutions of the Christians ?	а. А. с
		What is said of the Armenians and Persians ?	(Maria)
	12.	. What was Trajan's success ?	J
		What route dis he follow?	Li
	13.	What is said of his fleet? Why did he return ?	
	14.	What is said of his return and death ?	
	15.	What is said of his character ?	4
		What of his military virtues ?	in the second
	16.	To which did Adrian owe his elevation to the throne	? What is
	17	suid of him ? . What did Ploting do ?	
		What did the senate decree ?	2 4 a.S.
	10.	What did Adrian desire ?	
		What followed ?	1 211
	19.	What is said of the policy of Advian ?	+ a an 18t
		What of the Roman conquest in the east ?	
		What of the European provinces ? .	A to to the
	20.	What of the bridge over the Danube ?	柳"。北京 復設
sL.	21.	What is said of the accomplishments of Adrian ?	1
	22.	What of his moral virtues ?	·
	23.	What of contrasting vices ?	-1 M. E.
		What of his character as an emperor ?	
	24.	What Provinces did he visit ?	• 注情 2 刊
		What is said of Parthig ? What of Africa ?	· ···
		What great city did Adrian rebuild ?	A There .
	25.	What is said of Jerusalem ? What of the Jews ?	100 25
	26.	Where did Adrian reside ? Whom did he first ch	oose as his
		successor ?	1 2 7 7 L
		Whom did he afterwards choose ? What is said of .	Antoninus 1
	27.	. What of the last years of Adrian's life ?	distantion in
		What was his age, and how long had he reigned ?	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

CHAPTER XXI.

FROM THE DEATH OF ADRIAN TO THE DEATH OF MARCUS . AURELIUS, A. D. 138 TO 180. - YEAR OF ROME 891 TO 933.

he senate 1

v. 2

3.2

2 42

, 11

What is

.26

11

1 4 10 198

1:12 (bill

...... au

\$ 23

* **

1 36 37

31 301

noose as his

Antoninus 110

(des. and)

1. Antoninus, the successor of Adrian, was a native of Gaul. He was the son of a nobleman of ancient family, and had so filled some of the most important offices of state as to merit the respect and affection of his country. Nor did his elevation to the throne tend to weaken the virtues developed in a humbler station. He was called a second Numa. The same love of religion, justice, and peace characterized both princes; but while the influence of Numa extended only to infant Rome, and a few surrounding villages, Adrian diffused peace and order over half the world.

2. Unwilling to burden his subjects with ostentatious or unnecessary expenses, he spent little time in travelling over his dominions. He moderated many imposts and tributes, and commanded that all should be levied without partiality and oppression. When Fanstina, the empress, expostulated with him for carrying his liberality so far as to dispose of his own private fortune for the relief of the indigent, he replied, that when he became emperor he gave up all private interests; and that all he now had belonged to the public.

3. He even protected the oppressed Christians, declaring that whoever molested them merely on account of their religion, should be made to suffer the punishment designed for the accused. When any sought to inspire him with a love of military glory, he replied, that he desired more the preservation of one subject than the destruction of a thousand enemies.

Babelin

Ba

De

, MIL

COS

pre

his

froi

Ro

1320

inte

He

of t

fault

grea

sena

to be

-111

Wou

émpe

mids

of th

this

Dásso

deba

elg

empi

were

barb

calar

Ware

aguin

had

4. His long and prosperous reign was so peaceful as to afford but few materials for the historian. While at Dorium, a pleasure house at a short distance from Rome, he was seized with a violent fever, and believing death to be near, he confirmed the adoption of Marcus Aurelius, and commanded that the golden statue of fortune, which always occupied the chamber of the emperor, should be carried from his into that of his successor. He died in the seventy-sixth year of his age, after having reigned twenty-two years and eight months. A. D. 161.—Year of Rome 914.

5. Marcus Aurelius, the successor of Antoninus, associated with himself in the government Lucius Verus, the son of that Verus whom Adrian had first adopted, and Rome was for the first time governed by two sovereigns of equal power. Their merits were, however, far from being equal. While Aurelius was remarkable for his virtues and accomplishments, Verus rendered himself contemptible by his ungovernable passions, and corrupt morals. The one was an example of wisdom and goodness, the other of ignorance, sloth, and extravagance.

6th. Scarcely were they seated on the throne, when their peace was disturbed by the attacks of the barbarous nations on all sides of their dominions. The barbarians of Europe were, however, soon subdued by the generals of the empire, and Verus himself marched against the Parthians.

7. But his desire for military glory was only shortlived. Advancing no further than Antioch, he there gave himself up to the indulgence of his passions, rioting inexcesses unknown even to the voluptuous Greeks. In the mean time his generals opposed the enemy with entire success. Parthia was entirely subdued; the citie

Babylon and Ctesiphon taken; and the magnificent palaces of the Parthians monarchs utterly destroyed.

⁶¹¹ S. These advantages, however, were obtained at the cost of more than half the army, which had become the prey of pestilence and famine. But neither the loss of his soldiers nor his own inactivity, could prevent Verus from claiming and obtaining a triumph on his return to Rome.

9. During the absence of Verus, Aurelius had been intent on advancing the interests of his subjects at home. He devoted himself with untiring zeal to the regulation of the affairs of government, and to the correction of such faults as he found in the laws and policy of the state. So great was the respect paid by him to the opinions of the senate, that the days of the commonwealth seemed almost to be restored.

10. Aurelius hoped that Verus, on his return to Rome, would lay aside vices so disgraceful to his character as an emperor. In this he was, however, disappointed. In the midst of the terror and disolation caused by the ravages of the plague, which the soldiers had brought from Parthia and spread in all the provinces through which they passed, Verus still gave himself up to the indulgence of detauchery.

11. Nothing could exceed the miserable state of the empire at this time. To the horrors of the pestilence were added earthquakes, famines, and inundations. The barbarous nations of the north, taking advantage of these calamities, advanced even to Italy. And as if these evils were not enough, a violent. persecution was commenced against the Christians, under protence that their impiety had brought these calamities upon the state. In this

persecution, Justin Martyr, Polycarp, bishop of Smyrna, and many others perished.

.7

by.

Ron

inter

hiffo

enen

when

refre

charg

thund

10 th:

ing th

latter

a Chri

of the

lius . in

against

of thei

hasten

east.

ing to s

the emp

emperor

the fam

Casar,

for the r

18.

endeavou

The love

The love w

17.

16

12. In the midst of these distresses, Aurelius prepared to oppose the inroads of the barbarians. Taking Verus with him, he advanced against the Quadi and Marcomanni, and in a few months succeeded in subduing those tribes. Verus died of apoplexy, while on his journey back to Rome. Some affirm that he was poisoned by Faustina, the empress; others that he fell a victim to the jealousy of his wife, Lucida. His death was little regretted. The most that can be said in his praise is, that he did not seek to oppose the wise plans of his colleague.

13. Aurclius, now freed from the burden of his colleagues' follies and vices, began to act with greater vigor than ever for the good of the empire. Having succeeded in quelling a second irruption of the barbarians, he employed himself on his return to Rome, in the regulation of public affairs. He moderated the public expenses, and leasened the number of shows and sports exhibited in the amphitheatre. He endeavored to restrain the luxury of the rich, and took the poor under his especial protection.

14. His labors in behalf of the empire were, however, again interrupted by the incursions of the barbarians; and the strength of all the nations between Illyricum and the furthest part of Gaut being now united, they were more formidable then ever. In order to increase the number of his army, which had been much weakened by the plague, Aurelius inlisted slaves, gladiators, and even the banditti of Dalmatia; and to supply the exhausted treasury, he sold all the moveable of the empire, and an the rich furniture which had been deposited in the cabinet of Adrian.

myrna,

repared Verus omarni, e tribes. back to austina, jealousy gretted: did not

colleaer vigor icceeded employ-2 egulation nses, and d in the uxury of otection. however, rbarians : icum and hey were rease the kened by and even xhausted , and an rol cabinet endearourous The love w. 15. The details of this war are not clearly related by bistorians. One battle is mentioned in which the Romans were saved from defeat by the immediate interposition of heaven. Enclosed by mountains, almost suffocated by heat, and surrounded on all sides by the enemy, they seemed cut off from all hope of deliverance, when the bursting of a sudden shower of rain revived and refreshed the fainting soldiers. The same clouds discharged so violent a storm of hail, accompanied with thunder, upon the enemy, as to astonish and confound them, so that for were easily overpowered by the Romans.

16. Such Pagan and Christian writers unite in declaring this escape to have been miraculous; but while the latter declare it to have been in noswer to the prayers of a Christian legion, the former ascribe it to the efficacy of those of the emperor. However this may be, Aurelius immediately relaxed the persecution carried on against the Christians, and wrote to the senate in behalf of their religion.

17. At the close of this war, Aurelius was obliged to hasten home, to quell a rebellion which had arisen in the east. Avidius Cassius, one of his favorite generals, aspiring to supreme power, and encouraged, it is supposed, by the empress Faustina, caused himself to be proclaimed emperor of Syria. One of his chief artifices to procure popularity, was his giving out that he was decended from the famous Cassius, who had conspired against Julius Casar, and like him he pretended that his desires were for the re-establishment of the commonwealth of Romé.

18. Aurelius calmly prepared to oppose him Avidius endeavoured in vain to draw over Greece to his interests. The love which all mankind bore to the good emperor.

aw

eiHis

,191 ______13 _____14

din

0 15.

. 16. eysb

L.17.

1018.1 19.

sdr ?

eul n

, Lagn

Tairs

ESEO

1.

pani and hono ple v and peop follie virtu 2. to an men were porit

frustrated his expectations, and he was slain by his own officers in less than four months after his first revolt. His head was brought to the emperor, who saw it with regret, and commanded that it should receive honorable interment. The rest of the conspirators were treated with great lenity; and such of them as were banished, were afterwards recalled.

19. Aurelius was not permitted to spend his last days in peace. Once more an irruption of the Scythia's and barbarous nations of the north, rendered it necessary for him to lead an army against them. Many bloody battles were fought, in which the courage and example of the emperor gained the victory. While advancing upon his third campaign, he was seized with the plague, at Vienna, and died in the fifty-ninth year of his age, having reigned nineteen years and some days. 180 A. D. 933 year of Rome.

Questions on Chapter Twenty-First.

44.	5,8 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1.	Who was Antoninus ?
	What is said of him ? What has he been called f
,	Why did be not travel much?
3.	What reply did he make to Faustina ?
	How did he treat the Christians 1
	When urged to seek military glory, what was his reply ?
4.	What was the character of his reign ?
-	
5.	What is said of his death T Whom did Marcus Aurelius associate with himself in the
	government ?
6.	What is said of the character of the two emperors 1
	What troubled the peace of the empire ?
7.	What of Verus ?
	How did he spend his time ?
8.	What was the success of his generals 1
9	
	What of Aurelius during the absence of Verus 1
1	What of Aurelius during the absence of Verus 1 How did Verus act on his neturn to Rome 1
	PRAIL Must a near and man theolets on Prostan a

147

his own df. His hregret, le interted with ed were last days has and searry for dy battles ble of the g upon his at Vienna, re, having a. D. 983

the of the

eit no." .

. Campa.

paired

son, en panied . and on ple with ple with record von the ple with son on the son on the plane the son on the son of son on the son of son on the son of son CWO What was the state of the empire at this time 1
(12. What is said of the persecution of the Christians 1
Whom did Aurelius go to oppose 2
(13. What is said of the dath of Verus 1
(13. What of Aurelius site, his death 1
(14. How were his labors again interrupted 1
(15. What is said of the details of this war 7
How procure treasure 1
(16. In what do Pagan and Christian writers agree 1
(17. What is said of Aurelius do ?
(18. What did Aurelius do ?
(19. What is said of Avidius 3
(19. What is said of Avidius 1
(10. What is said of Avidius 1
(11. What is said of Avidius 1
(12. What is said of Avidius 1
(13. What is said of the last years of the life of Aurelius 1
(13. What of his death 1

CHAPTER XXII.

E FROM THE DEATH OF AURELIUS TO THE DEATH OF SEVERUS. A. D. 180 TO 211.-YEAR OF ROME 933 TO 964.

1. The virtues of Aurelius procured for Commodus, his son, an easy accession to the throne. He had accompanied his father in the expedition against the barbarians, and on his return to Rome, after having procured an honorable peace with them, he was received by the people with every demonstration of joy. His graceful person and popular address attracted the public favor; and the people were willing to excuse on account of his youth the follies that he had committed, and to believe that the virtues of the father were inherited by the son.

2. For the first few years of his reign little occurred to and eccive them. The wisdom and integrity of the men who had been the counsellors of the good Aurelius, were sufficient to preserve at least an appearance of prozpority. Commodus himself gave so many proofs of

generosity, as to leave room for the belief that the many crimes which disgraced his reign were rather the consequences of a weak yielding to evil counsel, than the fruits of a cruel and wicked disposition.

the

the

stati

Was

WAS

DOTS

obts

a fre

prese

his p

the p

erect

their

corn

restra

emper

death

that

WAS &

his or

the ty

9.

of ev

theafr

OCCA

that

med

8.

7.

3. About this time a conspiracy was formed against him within the walls of his own palace. Lucilla, his sister, the widow of Lucius Verus, weary of occupying only a second rank, and envious of the power of the reigning empress, armed the murderer against the life of her brother. On returning one night from the amphitheatre, Commodus was met by one of the conspirators, who rushing upon him with a drawn sword exclaimed, "The senate send you this." The attempt proved unsuccessful. Being seized by the guards, he confessed the whole plot. Lucilla was banished and afterwards put to death, and the rest of the conspirators shared her fate.

4. But the words of the assassin were never forgotten by Commodus. From that time he manifested equal fear and hatred of the senate, and many of its noblest ornaments fell victims to his rage. The death of one person of rank involved the death of all who might lament or revenge him, and Commodus once excited to cruelty, became incapable of pity or remorse.

5. The discovery of several conspiracies which had been formed against him, seemed only to increase his thirst for blood. Perrennis, his favorite minister, fell a victim to his suspicions. Maternus, a private soldier, collected together a great number of those who like himself had deserted from the army, and advanced towards Rome, with the design of murdering the emperor, and placing himself on the throne. He was, however, betrayed by the envy of an accomplice, at the moment when his enterprise was ripe for execution.

many

ODSOT

fruite

sister_

mly a

igning

of ber

heatre,

rush-

senate

Being

Lucilla

rest of

rgotten

ual fear

aments

of rank

revenge

ne inca-

ich had

his thirst

a victim

collected

self had

me, with

himself

e envy o

was ripe

minst

6. The successor of Perrennis in the favor of Commoden, was Cleander, by birth a Phrygian. He had entered the palace as a slave, and had made himself so useful to the emperor, that he was raised by him to the most exalted station that a subject could occupy. His ruling passion was avarice. By him the rank of patrician and senator was exposed for sale, and he shared with the several governors the revenues of the provinces. In this way, he soon obtained a larger fortune than had ever been possessed by a freed man.

7. Commodes was well pleased as long as the magnificent presents of his minister afforded him the means of gratifying his passions. Cleander sought to divert envy and dazzle the people by an appearance of liberality, and caused the erection of baths, porticos, and places of exercise for their use.

9. At length, however, being accused of withholding corn in a time of famine, the populace could no longer be restrained. Approaching in a body the palace of the emperor, they demanded that Cleander should be put to death. Yielding to necessity, the emperor commanded that his head should be thrown to them, and the tumult was appeared. Several succeeding favorites, and many of his own relations, soon after fell victims to the cruelty of the tyrant.

9. Commodus now gave himself up to the indulgence of every folly. He fought with wild beasts in the amphitheatre, and certainly displayed wonderful skill. On one occasion, he killed with his own hand one hundred lions; that were let loose at once in the amphitheatre. He assumed the name of a common gladiator, and fought in this character seven hundred and thirty five times, cauting

his exploits to be recorded in the public acts of the empire. He still further disgraced hunself by exacting from the common fund of gladiators a stipend so exorbitant as to become a new and ignominous tax on the Roman people.

10. At length, however, some of his own household, fearing that they might be the next victims of his cruelty, determined to save themselves by destroying him. Marcia, one of his female favorites, mingled poison with his wine; and while under its influence he was strangled without resistance. Thus died Commodus, in the thirty-first year of his age, and the thirteenth of his reign. A. D. 192; year of Rome, 945.

11. The plans of the conspirators had been well laid. They had decided to make Pertinax, prefect of the eity, the successor of the tyrant. Of humble origin, Pertinaxis had risen by his own merit to occupy some of the meets important offices of the state. He had for some time comes manded the armics in Britain and Africa, and had governed several provinces. He was beloved by the people, whose joyfully hailed him emperor, but his accession was colding received by the prætorian bands.

12. Pertinax immediately applied himself to the reformant of abuses. He reduced the expenses of the imperial houses hold one half, remitted the unjust taxes of Commodus, and removed many oppressive restraints which had been high on contract. But while by these means he secured that ester the people, he excited the anger of the pretoriant bands, by restoring the strictness of ancient disciplined Several conspiracies which they formed against him, were discovered and defeated, either by the resolution of that emperor, or the faithfulness of his friends, and they at ladi

150

Hew

determined to seize by open violence what they could not obtain by fraud.

-13. Two or three hundred of the most desperate of their number, therefore, marched at noonday to the imperial palace. The gates were thrown open to them by their companions on guard. Pertinax, scorning flight, calmly awaited their approach, and reminded them of his innocence, and the sacredness of their own oath. For a time they stood ashamed of their design, but at last a Tungrian soldier aimed the first blow, and Pertinax immediately fell covered with wounds, after a short reign of three months.

14. The guards, who had made no plan beyond the death of Pertinax, immediately retired to their camp, which was strongly fortified, there to await the consequence of their act. Meeting with no molestation from the people, they assumed their former insolence, and boldly offered the empire for sale to the highest bidder.

bilds. Only two persons were found sufficiently despicable to listen to this insolent proposal, Sulpicius, son-in-law of Pertinax and præfect of the city, and Didius Julian, a wealthy but weak senator. Didíus was the successful bilder. On promising to each soldier six thousand two hundred and fifty drachms, a sum equal to two hundred pounds, he was received into the camp, and then conducted by them through the streets of the city. The Senate had no alternative but to acquiesce in the will of the soldiers, and Julian took up his residence in the imperial palace.

Source of any duties was expected or required of him. He was mild and gentle in his disposition. Desiring to injure

fatheb acting xorbixorbibe-the costs cost

ertinazi e-most! ie come overnied le, who: s coldiya Willes e reformi I bount dusziamiti eens hint ured the retoriast isciplinea in, were on of the y at last

HATORT OF ROME.

na one, he seemed not to be aware that others might reals to injure him, and he gave himself up to the enjoyment of pleasure, without taking any measures to secure the eee, in tinuance of his power.

17. In the mean time, all the divisions of the army had, declared against him. Niger, the general in Syria, found no difficulty in persuading his soldiom to declare him: emperor, and the governors and kings of the various provinces of the east acknowleged his claim, and sent ambase vinces of the east acknowleged his claim, and sent ambase vinces to him. Instead, however, of hastening to Romea where his arrival was impatiently expected, Niger remained at Antioch, satisfied with the homage of those about him, till the favorable moment was past.

18. Severus, general of the army in Panonia, on the 10 contrary, having secured his soldiers to his interest, by the sell promise of a sum equal to four hundred pounds to each of man, lost no time in advancing to Rome. Julian, incapared ble of forming any plan of defence, awaited his arrival in the terror. The emissaries of Severus assured the pretoring guards of their safety, provided that Julian and the murderers of Pertinax were given up to him. With these for conditions they at once complied, and Julian was beheaded? by them after a brief reign of sixty-six days.

19. The first care of Severus was to degrade the W prestorians from being soldiers, and to banish them from ito Rome. After making some arrangements for the peace of org the city, he marched against Niger, who was still honored at as the emperor of the east. The met on the plains of the Issus, on the very spot where Alexander had conquered the aid Persians. Severus was entirely victorious. Niger was not killed, and his head carried on a lance through the camp of the victor.

2

the an Britan by ray Fortu sive e ed and rival: 21.

to the rus for way fo organi: Italy, I legions fidehty mer av even th was loo reigns i 22. tered b

Vishin of Ron presene Caledo soon re his nun sea to 23.

that his

30. Although this victory secured to Severus the possection of the throne, he had still something to fear from the ambition of Claudius Albinum, general of the army in Britain. Begardless of fatigue or suffering, he advanced by rapid marches against him. The armies met in Gaul: Fortune for a time seemed variable, but at length a decisive engagement took place, in which Albinus was defeated and slain, and Severus now found himself without a rivel:

21. Peace and prosperity seemed now to be restored to the empire, but the extravagant favors with which Severus found it necessary to reward his army, prepared the way for future trouble. The prætorian bands were again organized. They were not, as formerly, chosen from Italy, but were composed of such soldiers from the various legions as were distinguished for strength, bravery, and fidehty; and they were increased to four times their former number. The senate Severus did not treat with even the outward appearance of respect. All the power was lodged in the army, and during this and the following reigns it was fearfully abused by them.

22. The last years of the life of Severus were embittered by the quarrels of his two sons, Caracalla and Geta-Wishing to withdraw them for a time from the dissipations of Rome, he took them with him to Britain, where his predence was required to repel an invasion made by the Caledonians on the southern parts of the island. Severus soon restored peace, and built the wall which still bears his name, from the Solway firth on the west, to the north sea to the east.

23. He then returned to York, where he was informed that his son Caracalla had induced the army to revolt, and

ent of C. CODT 1 Britai my had d found : re him A PDQ. ambas Romen mained at ut Sim, 12.71 on the 10 , by the sal to each al incaper. rrival in ant etorian 279 he mur-wer th these ist ebeaded? Revel by all ade the W? en from 10 peace of ora bonored : plains of on sored the sid iger Mas 13: CAMP OF that his ser declare him emperor. These tidings greatly aggrevated his bodily sufferings, which had for some time been intenses; yet calling his son and those who had joined him into his presence, he reproved them in such terms for their unnetural conduct, that they besought his pardon on their knees. Soon after his sufferings increased so greatly, that he besought his attendants to give him poison. This being refused, he loaded his stomach with food which he could not digest, and he soon after died, in the sixtysixth year of his age, after a reign of about eighteen years. A. D. 211.—Year of Rome 964.

20. W

21. W

AZW

FROM AND

1. long a and ge la. I under than t 2. those of agains proper of guil relatio Papinis of his parrici

NII

Questions on Chapter Twenty-Second.

1.	What is said of Commodus ?	F 52.0.25 ¥
	How was he recived by the people ?	214 10
2.	What is said of his counsellors ?	- 2%. B ,
	What is said of his appearance of generosity ?	
2	What is said of the conspiracy formed against him f	1.1
	What was the fate of Lucilla ?	
-		".ant
-	How did Commodus ever after regard the Senate ?	-74 503
	What is said of Perrenuis ? What of Maternus ?	" di stalati
6.	Who was the successor of Perrennis ?	- 1. Al
	What is said of hum ? What was his ruling passion	1.1.1
7.	What did he expose for sale 1	under the
	What is said of Commodus ?	ithan two
	How did Cleander divert envy?	37#3 ILSUIJ,
8.	What was the fate of Cleander ?	11 .C
9.	What fallies did Commodue now commit ?	
	How did he still further degrade himself ?	those of .
10.		it i starte
	Who succeeded him ? What is said of Pertinax ?	against h
	To what did Pertinax apply himself ?	property
1.40	Who formed several conspiracies against him 1	
11		: 'livy lo
	What did they determine to do ?	Seitel m
	Describe the death of Perunax ?	
14.	Where did the guards retire ?	L'apiri
*	What did they then do 7	
15.	Who listened to them ?	11 lo
2	Who was the successful bidder ?	. Molney
18.	What is said of the Senate ?	- WESTLINE

155

What is said of Julian's disposition ?
What of Niger ?
What of Severus ?
What of Julian ? What was his fate ?
What of Julian ? What was his fate ?
Whom did he then go against ?
Whom did he then go against ?
Who did he then go against ?
What of the last years of the life of Severus ?
What of the last years of the life of Severus ?
What of the last years of the life of Severus ?
What did Caracalla do ?
How did Severus reprove him ?
What is said of his death ?

Hated

their reatly,

This

ich hè

sixty-

Years.

"ant

3 033

Tabau

than to

a.

1 osedt

D_CRIDE

737070

ling 10

ottelm.

Tapita?

8:1 10

้อ่าวธา

CHAPTER XXIII.

FROM THE DEATH OF SEVERUS TO THE DEATH OF MACRINUS AND BALBIENUS. A. D. 211 TO 239. YEAR OF ROME 964 TO 892.

1. As might have been expected, the brothers did not long share the empire. Geta, whose disposition was mild and gentle, soon fell a victim to the fierce hatred of Caracalla. Nor did he perish alone. It was computed that under the vague appellation of the friends of Geta, more than twenty thousand of both sizes perished.

2. Henceforth the cruelties of Cavacalla far exceeded those of Nero, or Domitian. If an accusation was brought against any senator or person of rank, that he was a man of property and virtue, it was to Caracalla a sufficient evidence of guilt. Persons of rank and influence, and even his own relations, were put to death on the most frivolous pretences. Papinian, being asked by the tyrant to write a vindication of his conduct, refused, saying "It is easier to commit a parricide than to defend it." For this he was beheaded.

230

ilu.

of:t

spin

men

SCAT

with

hisi

by.

prev

7.7

Ales

béco

peop

pect

asfar

Dens

Bien.

aday

Feat

tofty

inigh

and

and

1000

Tim.

1. Ild

bein

54 :

3. It had been foretold by an Ayasrian astrologue, that Caracalla was to die by the means of Macrinus, can of his ministers. Macrinus, fearful for his own safety, should, this report come to the ears of the emperor, determined to preserve his own life at the expense of his master's. To carry his design into execution, he engaged the services of Martial, a man of great strength and courage, a centurion of the guards. He, seizing an opportunitywhen the emperor was alone, gave him a mortal wound-He had reigned ingloriously six years. A. D. 217.—Year of Rome 970.

4. The prætorion guards, after some hesitation, declared Macrinus his successor. The power which elevated him, however, soon after destroyed him. He fell a victim to his attempts to restrain the licentiousness of the soldiers. Indignant at the restraints imposed on them, and charmed with the fancied resemblance of the young Heliogabalus to Caracalla, whose unbounded, indulgence they now regretted, they put Macrinus to death, after a reign of one year and two months, and Heliogabalus, was declared emperor.

5. Heliogabalus was only fourteen years of age when, placed upon the throne, and the character of his reign wap: such as might have been expected. Freed from all restraint, he soon gave himself up to the indulgence of every, imaginable folly and extravagance. During his short, reign of four years, he married and divorced six, wires. Although his dress was always of the richest purple, embroidered with gold, and precious stones, he never wore, the same habit twice. He even assumed the dress and manners of a woman, and was married, first to one of his officers, and afterwards to a slave named Harocles, whom,

167

he suffered to beat him when he had been guilty of any-

in 64 Many of his follies assumed the appearance of shildish weakness. At one time he ordered the collection: of ten thousand pounds of spiders, to be a testimony to the greatness of the city. His guests were invited in the same spirit of absurdity. Thus he made a feast for eight old mea, eight blind men, eight deaf men, eight black men, eight lame with the gout, and eight so fat that they could searcely sit at the table. A spirit of cruelty always mingled with his childishness. Sometimes he would nearly suffocate his guests in rooms filled with roses, or would terrify them by letting loose among them wild beasts, which had been previously deprived of their teeth and claws.

Alexander with himself in the government. Soon, however, becoming jealous of his influence with all ranks of the people, he determined to destroy him. This being suspected by the prætorian guards, with whom Alexander was, a favorite, they determined to preserve his life at the expense of that of the emperor.

98. The whinsical character of Heliogabalas was displayed in the preparations that he made for his death; Fraring that he might be driven to extremities, he built as tofty tower, with steps of gold and pearl, from which he might throw himself down. He prepared cords of purple, and gold to strangle himself with ; he provided swords, and daggers of gold; and kept poison in boxes of emerald, in order that he might choose the manner of his death. His preparations were, however, of no avail. He was fulled in his own palace by the soldiers, and his body, afterbeing dragged through the streets, was thrown into the

evated

victim

diers.

abalus

T BOW

ign of

eclared.

1.9125.07

when.

ED WAS.

Il ret-

f every

sa short.

wires.

le, em-

T. WORR.

of his

whom,

Tiber. He died in the nineteenth year of his age, after a detestable reign of four years.—A. D. 222, year of R. 975.

. 1

di

app

a.7

firs

hal

COL

mo

thu

day

ere

1 24

on

to

bei

sole

foll

day

bei

WOI

rep

wer

slas

-wit

abd

el

infl

the

1199

stri

bas

gav

9. The life and reign of Alexander were in all respects a perfect contrast to that of his predecessor. In dress, food, and manners, he was characterized by the utmost simplicity. He devoted himself with great energy to the conducting of business, and spent his leisure time in pursuing his favorite studies of poetry, history, and philosophy. The provinces flourished in peace and prosperity, and the dignity, freedom, and authority of the senate were restored.

10. His mother Mamæa, a woman eminent for her virtues and accomplishments, possessed great influence over 'him. She is said to have embraced the Christian religion during the last part of her life, and to have taught its precepts to her son. However this may be, the penalties inflicted upon the Christians during the former reign, were remitted, and they were permitted to worship unmolested.

11. Although he was at first a favorite with the prætorian bands, the virtues of Alexander soon become more hateful to them than the vices of his predecessor had been. The army, long accustomed to unbounded license, bore with impatience the gentle restraints imposed upon them, and the emperor at last fell a victim to their discontents. While engaged in conducting the war against the northern barbarians, some of the legions mutinied. Accusing him of weakness in submitting to be guided by the counsels of his mother, they declared their intention of choosing an emperor who could govern alone. An executioner was, therefore, sent to his tent, who beheaded him, after a reign of thirteen years and nine days, in the twenty-ninth year of his age. His mother Manze abared his fate. A. D. 235.—Year.of Rome 988.

r a 4

ets.

255.

lost

the .

1117>

by.

the

red.

vir-

ver

rion

pre-

rere

sted.

nan

teful The

im-

the

Thile

rbar-

eale-

ther.

who

sent

rteen -

age.

TER 1

• 12. Maximin, who had been the chief promoter of the discontents which led to the death of Alexander, was appointed by the army to succeed him. He was by birth a Thrasian peasant, but had gradually risen till he held the first command in the army. He measured eight and a half feet in height, and possessed amazing strength. He could draw a carriage which a yoke of oxen could not move, and his wife's bracelet usually served him for a thumb ring. He generally ate forty pounds of meat a day, and drank six gallons of wine, without seeming to exceed the bounds of moderation in either.

13. He was first known to the emperor Severus when, on his return from an eastern expedition, he stopped to celebrate the birthday of his son Geta. Maximin, being a peasant, was not permitted to wrestle with the soldiers, but defeated successively sixteen of the strongest followers of the camp. Through the whole of the next day, he followed on foot the horse of the emperor, who, being astonished at his strength, asked him at night if he would wrestle after his race. "Most willingly, sir," replied Maximin, and soon seven of the strongest soldiers were overcome.

with the soldiers, who bestowed on him the names of Ajax and Hercules. The many favors which had been bestowed on him by Alexander, instead of exciting his gratitude, inflamed his ambition, and he used every means to excite the soldiers to revolt.

striking contrast to the gentleness and liberality of Alexander. No sooner was he raised to the throne, than he gave way to the fierce cruelty of his disposition. He put

in the

preve

the s while

family

of bot

thenc

street

抗

· 112

1. W

2. W

3. W

4. W

WW

W

6. Giv

7. WI

10. WI

11. WA 12. Wi

12. W

14. WY

15, Wł

16: Wh Wi

W

W

He 9. WI

many to death for no other crime than remembering the meanness of his eigin. He destroyed thousands merely on suspicion of reason, and no man of noble birth or elegant accomptionments was suffered near his person.

16. By a single act of authority he appropriated to his own use the treasures of the provinces, and the indignation against him became general. The first open rebellion took place in the African provinces, where the two Gordians, father and son, descended from a noble Roman family, were declared emperors. The senate openly acknowledged their claim, and took measures to oppose Maximin. Unfortunately for their cause, however, the youngest Gordian was defeated and slain in battle, and his father put end to his own life at the same time.

17. The senate had now gone too far to retreat. They, therefore, choose two of their number, Maximus and Balbienus, as emperors, and hastened their preparations for defence. In the mean time, Maximin, filled with rage at the revolt, hastened towards Italy. He found the towas and villages forsaken, and all the provisions either carried away or destroyed. Approaching the city of Aquillia, which he expected to enter without difficulty, he found it strongly defended.

18. He first attempted to take the city by storm, This failing, he determined to besiege it. But the soldiered harassed by famine and fatigue, and indignant at some new acts of cruelty, determined to put an end to their burthens by the death of the tyrant. He was, therefore, killed, while sleeping in his tent at noon, in the sixty-fifth year of his age, having reigned three years. A. D. 238.—Year of Rome 991.

19. The death of Maximin left Meximus and Balbienus

160.

in the full possession of power, but their united jealousies prevented their long enjoyment of it. Maximus claimed the superiority, on account of his greater experience, while Balbienus was equally aspiring, on account of his family and fortune. The prætorian bands were the enemies of both ; attacking them in the palace, they were dragged thence and slain, and their bodies left exposed upon the street.

Questions on Chapter Twenty-Third.

1. What was the fate of Geta 7 How many perished with him ?

17:30 T

r-

ly

be

ad.

Y

pat.

or.

nt i

DAU

101

.

it

ad

- 2. What is said of the cruelties of Caracalla ? What of Papinian ?
- 3. What had been predicted ? Whom did Macrinus employ ?
- 4. What is said of the death of Caracalla ? Who succeeded Caracalla ?
- 5. What was the fate of Macrinus ? Who succeeded Macrinus ? What is said of the character of his reign ? What of his follies and extravagance f
- 6. Give examples of the childishness of his follies ? What is said of his cruelty ?
- 7. Whom did he associate with himself in the government?
- 8. What did the guards determine ?:
- What preparations did Heliogabalus make for his death ? How did he die ?
- 9, What is said of the life and reign of Alexander ?
- 10. What of n. mother ? 11. What is sale of the army ?
 - 12. What of the death of Alexander ?. Who succeeded Alexander ? What is said of him ?
 - 12. What is said of his wrestling ? 14. What of his valor ?

 - What names did the soldiers give him ?
 - 15, What of his ambition ?
 - What was his course on coming to the throne ?
 - 16, What raised general indignation 1 When did the rebellion first break out ? What was the fate of the Gordians ?

 What of the senate in the meantime ? What of Maximin ? What of Aquillia ?
 18. What did he first attempt ? What of his death ?
 19. What of Maximus and Balbienus ? What of Maximus and Balbienus ?

CHAPTER XXIV.

PROM THE DEATHS OF MAXIMUS AND BALPIANUS, TO TAX DEATH OF AURELIAN. A. D. 238 TG 275. TRAN OF ROME 931 TO 1028.

1. In the course of a few months six princes had been out off by the sword, and the only person who occured to the soldiers as proper to fill the vacant throne, was Gordian, grandson of him who had been declared emperor in Africa. This prince was only sixteen years of age when called to the throne; but the wise counsels of his instructor Misitheus, whose daughter he married, supplied his want of experience, and encouraged him in the exercise of these virtue, calculated to secure the affections of his subjects, and the good of the empire.

2. In the fifth year of his reign, the Persians invaded Mesopotamia, and threatened Antioch. Gordian, accompanied by Misitheus, marched with a great army against them, and entirely defeated them, taking many cities as the fruits of his victory. While Misitheus lived, Gero dian met with entire success ; but his death occuring about this time, Philip, who succeeded him in the command, as piring to supreme power, took advantage of some disorders which appeared, to excite mutiny among the soldiers, which ended in the death of Gordian, in the twentysecond year of his age and the sixth of his reign. A: D. 244.—Year of Rome 997.

3. the ar him w the so of rob ation years a that su 4. ested t of an revolte Philip aspect their " predic same 1 .5. Marin was a comma hailed. betwee have r

longer

Philip,

ed, and

that be

in the

A. D. 5

devote

the arre

+ Stune must

2 .80: 903

in rothing

ation.

VILLENT

172 JES."

3. Philip was immediately acknowledged emperor by the army, and the senate had no alternative but to salute him with the little of Augustus. He was of obscure birth; the son of an Arabian who had been the leader of a band of robber. In order to reconcile the people to his usurpation he celebrated the national games, one thousand years after the foundation of the city, with a magnificence that surpassed any of his predecessors.

4. He was not, however, permitted long to enjoy unmolested the throne which he had usurped. Marinus, general of an army which had been sent against the Goths, revolted, and caused himself to be proclaimed emperor. Philip and the senate were alike alarmed at the threatening aspect of affairs; but Decius, a noble senator, revived their courage by treating the matter with contempt, predicting that Marinus would soon fall a victim to the same power which had procured his temporary elevation.

5. The event proved that he was not mistaken. Marinus was put to death by the soldiers, and Decius was appointed by the emperor to succeed him in the command. On his arrival in the camp, he was at once hailed emperor by the army. He had no alternative between the throne and a violent death. He is said to have written to Philip that he would hold the power no longer than was necessary to restore it to his hands. Philip, however, marched against him; but his army revolted, and joined that of Decius, and Philip shared the fate that he had procured for his predecessor. He was killed in the forty-fifth year of his age and the fifth of his reign. A. D. 249. — Year of Rome 1002.

6. Decius having been acknowledged his successor, devoted himself to the reformation of abuses, and to the

the ar as mint the 201 of rote ation, V. Silli -12 205X 1. 100 ested t beenlo ed to Gor-Peror 100 f his plied rcise f his S ADW aded o com rainst cities Garol bout dia b9 lisordiers.0 entr A: D. dercte

5.

indulg

of the

of the

had ta

the we

of oth

on aga

civil w

rictory

army.

ensued

and fo

Emilia

end o

army I

reform

reform

empire

Valeria

to repe

by Sar

seven

perial

a const

ever t

placed

Valeria

it is m

the sha

12.

11.

10.

advancement of such measures as might secure the prosperity of the employ. He revived the office of censor, and the choice of the senate fell on Valerian, a man whose virtues rendered him worthy of the honor. In the present state of the empire, however, the impartial exercise of the censorial authority would have been attended with great danger. The corruptions which existed among all classes, the obstinate disputes between the Christians and Pagans within the empire, and the incursions of the barbarous nations on all sides of it, rendered his efforts of little avail.

7. The Goths were successfully opposed by Decius and his generals; and driven to such extremities, that they would have been glad to purchase peace by the surrender of all the booty obtained by the successful depredations of many months. But Decius, confident of victory, and determined to humble their power, refused their terms, and the armies met.

8. At the commencement of the battle, the son of Decius, a youth of great promise, was slain by an error by the side of his father. The soldiers, with whom he was a favorite, were shocked at this event, but Decius, summoning his fortitude, reminded them that the death of one man could make little difference to the result of the battle, and encouraged them to action. A terrible contest ensued. The Romans, becoming entangled in a moras, were utterly defeated, and Decius was slain, or perished in the morass. His body was never found. He reigned two years and six months.

9. Gallus, who has been accused of betraying Decime mto the hand ot the Goths, succeeded him in the empire. He lost no time in purchasing peace with the barbariana, and bastened to Rome, where he gave himself up to the

PT05-

BSOF,

Loss

esent

fthe

reat

LSSC5,

gans

TOUS

vail.

s and

they

ender

tions

and

r, and

n of

or by

was a

mon-

fone

attle

ntest

DTASS,

ed in

d two

Cours

eciu

pire:

rians,

in Rom

ad

indulgence of pleasure, altogether unmindful of the welfare of the empire. Nothing could exceed the wretchedness of the provinces at this time. The means which Gallus had taken to purchase peace with the Goths, had betrayed the weakness of the empire, and encouraged the incursions of other barbarians. A violent persecution was carried on against the Christians, and the horrors of pestilence and civil war were soon added to those evils.

10. Emilianus, governor of Panonia, having gained a victory over the barbarians, was declared emperor by the army. Gallus hastened to oppose him, and in a battle that ensued was defeated and slain, after a reign of two years and four months. A. D. 253.—Year of Rome 1006. Emilianus fell a victim to the caprice of his soldiers at the end of four months, and Valerian, who commanded an army near the Alps, became emperor.

11. Although advanced in years, Valerian set about the reform of abuses with great diligence and energy. But reformation had now become almost impossible. The empire seemed just hastening to decay. Nor had Valerian much time to pursue his plans. In endeavouring to repel an incursion of the Persians, he was taken prisoner, by Sapor, their king; by whom, during a captivity of seven years, he was treated with the utmost cruelty.

12. We are told that in chains, and clothed in the imperial purple, he was exposed to the gaze of the multitude, a constant spectacle of fallen greatness; and that whenever the Persian monarch mounted on horseback, he placed his foot on the neck of the Roman emperor. When Valerian at last sunk under the weight of grief and shame, it is said that his skin, stuffed with straw, and formed inte the shape of a human being, was preserved for ages in the most celebrated temple of Persia.

Appo

in th

place

haile

SELTE

He

Goth

tinout

Agena

and

Goth

139:17

raged

After

s. amid

illnes

ment

of the

Quin

10Aqui

EN MAA

seve

army

his c

his y

137 19

His

ciplin

and d

alway

18

13. Galienus, his son, promising to revenge the insult offered to Rome in the person of his father, was appointed successor. Instead of this, however, he gave himself up to the indulgence of ease and luxury. While the empire was suffering under the accumulated evils of famine, pestilence, and civil war, Galienus remained inactive at Rome, inventing new pleasures, and answering with a jest when any new calamity was forced upon his notice.

14. During his reign a crowd of usurpers started up in almost every province of the empire. Some of them were men of virtue, vigor, and ability—generals compelled by their soldiers to except the title of emperor. Their bonors were, however, only shortlived. Not one of them enjoyed a life of peace, or died a natural death. The empire was, as may be supposed, in a wretched condition. In consequence of frequent revolutions and constant wars, the land remained uncultivated, and famine ensued. Pestilence followed in the train of famine; and for several years the plague raged with such violence as almost to depopulate whole towns.

15. Galienus was at last roused from his lethargy by the near approach of Aureolus, commander of the army of the upper Danube. A battle was fought, in which Aureolus was wounded and defeated. He then retired to the city of Milan, which Galienus at once invested. While here, a conspiracy was formed against the emperor by his own soldiers. A false alarm was given that the besieged had sallied forth to attack the emperor's forces. Galienus immediately hastened to the supposed place of attack, and a dart from an unseen hand inflicted on him a mortal wound. A. D. 268.—Year of Rome 1021.

16. It was said, that before his death Galienus had

appointed as his successor Claudius, a man who on account of his virtue and military talents had risen to a high station in the army. The conspirators had already agreed to place Claudius upon the throne, and his accession was hailed with joy by the people. His prudence and activity served for a time to arrest the rapid progress of decay. He subdued Aureolus, and then led his soldiers against the

antes:

inted

lfuto

opire

pes-

e at

jest

up in

WEITE

ed by

DIOLS

oyed

Was.

onse-

Ind

lence

s the

ulate

y by

ny of

folus

CITY

re, a

sol-

fied

ately

from

D.

"had

235

Goths, who with an army of three hundred and twenty thousand had invaded the Roman territories. By many signal victories, he freed the empire from these invaders, and obtained for himself the honorable appellation of the Gothic Claudius:

17. But the pestilence which had so long and so violently raged throughout the empire, proved fatal to the emperor. After a short but glorious reign of two years, he expired amid the tears and regrets of his subjects. During his last illness, he convened his officers, and in their presence mentioned Aurelian, one of his generals, as most deserving of the throne. A. D. 270.—Year of R. 1023.

18. Immediately upon the death of Claudius, his brother Quintilius caused himself. to be proclaimed emperor at Aquillia, where he commanded a considerable force. He was acknowledged by the senate, but his reign lasted only seventeen days. As soon as he heard of the immense army with which Aurelian was advancing from the Danube, his courage failed him, and he killed himself by causing his veins to be opened.

19. The reign of Aurelian, though short, was glorious. His success in arms was owing to the strictness of the discipline which he maintained among his soldiers. Gaming and drinking were prohibited. He expected that they should always keep their armour bright, their weapons sharp, and

their clothing and horses ready to march against the enemy. He strictly prohibited them from injuring the provinces through which they passed, by stealing to much as a sheep, a fowl, or a bunch of grapes.

20. The death of Claudius had inspired the Goths with new courage, and Aurelian soon found it necessary to march against them. He soon reduced them to such extremities, that they besought peace, and Aurelian ratified a favorable and lasting treaty with them. Some of the children of the Gothic chiefs were given to Aurelian at hostages. The sons he brought up to arms, near his own person; upon the daughters, he bestowed a Roman education, and afterwards married them to some of his chief officers; thus strengthening the ties that bound the two nations together.

21. After Aurelian had quelled an irruption of the Ulemanni, and subdued several usurpors that had arisen in Gaul, he turned his arms against Zenobia, queen of Palmyra and the east. This remarkable woman claimed descent from the Macedonian kings of Egypt; and while she equalled her ancestor Cleopatra in beauty and grace, she far surpassed her in virtue and valor. Her understanding was strengthened and adorned by study. She was not ignorant of the Latin tongue, and possessed in equal proportions the Greek, Syrian, and Egyptian languages.

22. She had married Odenathus, who, from a private station, had raised himself to the dominion of the east. His more against Sapor, the tyrant, who had taken exptive the emperor Valerian, had won for him the respect of the senate of Rome; and with the consent of Galiente, they had bestowed on him the title of Augustus, and at 2141 kaowledged him as the supporter of the Roman pawer in 2013.

of man

and wa

pizved.

processi

the east. This authority, which had been bestowed as a personal distinction, the senate claimed after his death; but Zenobia, disdaining both the senate and the emperor, determined to retain the power in her own hands, and defeated a Roman general who had been sent against her.

with

1 'to

ex-

ified

the

1 14

OWN

ICA-

hief

two

the

a in

yn .

ent

she

she

ing to Ha

to 50

113973

st. an

ip-2633

E. Laz

played troops 23. Aurelian, therefore, determined to assert his authority in person, and Zenobia made every preparation to receive, him. The fate of the east was decided by two great battles, the one fought near Antioch, the other near Emeasa. The forces of Zenobia, though commanded by herself with great courage and skill, were utterly defeated, and finding it impossible to raise a third army, she was obliged to take refuge in Palmyra, which Aurelian hastened to invest.

24. Zenobia, trusting that famine would compel the Romans to abandon the seige, or that the kings of the east would come to her assistance, defended the city with great courage and ability. But in this expectation she was disappointed. Fortune and the perseverence of Aurelian, over came all difficulties, and Zenobia was finally obliged to seek safety in flight. She was over taken by a party of Roman cavalry about sixty miles from Palmyra, and brought into the presence of Aurelian, who reserved her to grace his triumph on his return to Rome.

25. This triumph was the most magnificent that was ever enjoyed by a Roman conqueror. Hundreds of the most curious animals, from all parts, opened the procession. The wealth of Asla, the arms and ensigns of many conquered nations, and the magnificent plate and wardrobe of the queen of the east, were displayed. But the most interesting object in the whole procession was Zenobia herself, as bound with a golden

chain, and so covered with costly jewels as almost to faint beneath their weight, she preceded on foot the chariet in which she had hoped to enter Rome. Aurelian afterwards built her a palace at Tibur, and allowed her sufficient to support her in almost regal splendor. Her daughters married among the nobles of Rome.

26. Scarcely had Aurelien enjoyed this triumph, when a sedition broke out in Rome, on account of an attempt which he made to reform the coin. The strictness with which he punished those engaged in this sedition, degene-I rated into extreme cruelty. The noblest families in Rome were suspected, and many perished. At length Menestheus, one of his secretaries, being accused of extortion, fearful that punishment would follow, determind! ed to save himself by putting the emperor to death. Counterfeiting the handwriting of Aurelian, he prepared. a list containing the names of some of the chief officers of state. Upon this being shown to them, they never suspected the fraud, but believing themselves to be condemned to death, entered into a conspiracy against the emperor. He was slain in the sixty-third year of his age, after an active reign of five years. A. D. 275 .- Year of Rome-1020.

What is a what i

W

10. WI W

la Wh By

12. Der 13. Wh

14. Wh

15. Wh Wh

16. Wh

18: Who

19. Wha

22. Who Wha

24. Whe

29. Wha

f qilist

-acWh 20. What

21. Agai Whi

Whi 23. Wha

How

To what By w

Wha

What

Wha

17. What

W

Questions on Chapter Twenty-Fourth.

1. How many princes had been cut off in the course of a few months 1

2. What occured in the fifth year of his reign ?

What is said of his success ? What of Philip ?

3. Who succeeded Gordian ? What is suid of the origin of Philip ? How did he try to reconcile the people to his usurpation ?

4. What of Marinus ? What of Decius ?

faint

in in

hards

cient

bters

15 8

when

tempt

with

gene-

es in

ength

ed of

ermin-

death.

epared

cers of:

r sus-

demn-

peror.

iter an

Rome

671

Wh 23. Whi

NH

21. 11 1

a few

Philip 2

2

What did the event prove ? What was the fate of Marinus ? Who succeeded him ? How was Decius received by the army ? what was the fate of Philip ? To what did Decius now devote himself? 3175 What office did he receive ? Who was chosen censor ? 7. What is said of the state of the empire ? What is said of the Goths ? What did Decius refuse ? 8. What is said of the son of Decius? What was the result of the battle ? Who succeeded Decius ? What of Gallus ? If What was the state of the empire ? 10. What is said of Emilianus ? What was the fate of Gallus ? Who succeeded him ? 11. What did Valerian set about ? By whom was he taken captive ? 12. Describe the manner in which he was treated ? 13. What is said of Galienus ? 14. What occured during his reign ? What was the state of the empire ? 15. What at last roused Galienus ? What conspiracy took place ? What of his death ? 16. Whom did Galienus name as his successor ? What is said of Claudius ? What name did he obtain ? 17. What is said of his death ? 18. Who caused himself to be proclaimed emperor \$ What is said of him ? 19. What is said of the reign of Aurelian ? . What of his discipline ? 20. What is said of his success against the Goths ? What is said of the children of the Gothic chiefs ? 21. Against whom did he now turn his arms ? What is said of Zenobia ? 22/Whom had she married ? What is said of Odenotheus ? What of Zenobia after his death ? 23. What did Aurelian determine ? How was the fate of the East decided ? 24. Where did Zenobia take refugo ? To what did she trust ? What did she at last do 1 By whom was she taken ? 29. What is said of the triumph of Aurelian ? What of Zenobia ? 26. What sedition arose in Rome 1 What is said of Aurelian's strictness ? What conspiracy was f quilit 10 against him ? What of his death ? Strill"

CHAPTER XXV.

FROM THE DEATH OF AURELIAN TO THE DRATH OF CARNING A. D. 275 TO 284. YEAR OF ROME 1028 TO 1037.

1. After the death of Aurelian, a period of eight months elapsed before an emperor was placed upon the throne. The discovery of the perfidy of Menestheus filled the conspirators with consternation and regret. The army immediately wrote to the senate expressing their sorrow and indignation at the death of Aurelian, and entreating them to appoint his successor from among their own number.

2. Warned, however, by the fate of so many emperors, none of the senators were found willing to expose their person and dignity to the caprice of an armed multitude, and the choice was referred back to the army. They in their terror referred it to the senate, and, after mach delay and discussion, Tacitus, a senator of seventy-five years of age, a man universally respected for his wisdom and virtue, was prevailed upon to accept the throne. His accession was received with favor by the people and the army.

3. His short administration was characterized by wisdom and moderation. He restored to the senate the rights of which the tyranny of his predecessors had deprived them, and freely shared the power with them. He encouraged learning, and honored the memory of learned men. He caused the works of Tacitus, the historian, to be placed in every library in the empire, and had many of them transcribed at the public cost. His tastes were simple, his table being always furnished in the plainest manner. He would not allow the empress to wear jewels, and forbade the use of gold and embroidery.

4.

Aurahan A

haberes

Aurel invad it bec duced and as But b died a 276.-TE05.] Fleria ed hin army s of Pro fortune obstacl by thos end to opposit 6. H He had honor. of the] by the authorit Augusti of civil battles 7. H of Aure drove th delivere eluny.

Awel

ARMIUS

eight on the s filled The their their s, and g their

nerors, their titur.e. They mach ty-five visdom · His nd the Bilt in d by te the a had them. learntorian, many were lainest ewels, 4. The Alani, a tribe of Scythian origin, with whom Aurelian had made a treaty of peace, soon after his death invaded some of the eastern provinces, and Tacitus found it necessary to march against them. Some of them were induced by him peaceably to relinquish their booty and retire; and against the remainder, he carried on a successful war. But being seized with fever at Tyana, in Cappodocia, he died after a reign of six months and twenty days. A. D. 276.—Year of Rome 1029.

The 5. Immediately after the death of Tacitus, his brother Florian, without consulting the wishes of the senate, caused himself to be proclaimed emperor. A part of the army sided with him, and the remainder declared in favor of Probus, commander of the army in the east. The fortune and activity of Probus triumphed over every obstacle, and Florian, finding himself but feebly supported by those who had professed themselves his friends, put an end to his own life, and Probus met with no further opposition.

6. He was at this time about forty-four years of age. He had occupied various ranks in the army with great henor, and had at last been appointed by Tacitus general of the Roman forces in the east. He was much beloved by the army, and the senate at once acknowledged his anthority, and conferred on him the titles of Cæsar and Augustus. He permitted the senate to conduct the affairs of civil government, and spent his time in fighting the battles of the empire.

7. He subdued the barbarians, who since the death of Aurelian had harassed all parts of the empire, and drove them back to their native forests and mountains. He delivered Gaul from the oppression of the barbarians of allow

and

and o

and I

dence

engag

near

the so

some

their r

month

passio

as ho

Year

mously

the su

the go

confer

ted to

then to

eromei

son, N

had th

fines o

sist the

of the

propos

presen

a soldi

supper

.13.

12.

11

Germany, and invaded the latter in their own country. On his approach, nine of the German princes hastened to his camp, and throwing themselves at his feet, submitted to the terms of peace which he imposed upon them. One of these terms was, that they should supply the Roman army with sixteen thousand of the bravest and most robust of their youth. Upon many of the fugitive and captive barbarians he bestowed lands, cattle, and implements of husbandry, and encouraged them to settle in various parts of the empire.

S. While Probus was engaged in opposing the barbar. ians, a rebellion broke out in his own dominions. Saturnius, who had been appointed general of the army in the east, was declared emperor by the Egyptians, and compelled against his will to assume the purple. This rebellion was not, however, of long continue ice. Saturnius was defeated and slain. Probus was also successful in quelling a rebellion which had been raised by Bonosus and Proculus in Gaul, and peace was restored to the empire.

9. Probus then returned to Rome, where he enjoyed a magnificent triumph. This occasion was rendered memorable by the desperate courage of about eighty gladiators, who disdaining to shed their blood for the anusement of the populace, killed their keepers, broke from their place of confinement, and filled the streets of Rome with confusion and blood. After an obstinate resistance, they were overpowered and cut to pieces by the regular force.

10. The military discipline of Probus was strict without being severe or crucl. In order to preserve his soldiers from the dangers of idleness in the time of peace, he kept them continually employed. By their means, he improved the navigation of the Nile, built temples, palaces, porticoes

174 -

P

On

his

I to

One

man

bust

otive

ts of

parts

bar.

nius.

east,

elled

was

ated

ebel-

us in

red a

mor-

tors.

f the

ce of

usion

over-

1 3712

with-

diers

kept

oved

coes

17158

and bridges, changed unhealthy marshes into fruitful fields, and covered with rich vineyards the barren hills of Gaul and Panonia.

11. He at length, however, exceeded the bounds of prudence in the labors which he imposed on them. While engaged during the hot season in draining the marshes near Sirmium, in Panonia, the native province of Probus, the soldiers, fatigued and impatient under their unwholesome labors, mutinied, and the emperor fell a victim to their rage, after a prosperous reign of six years and four mouths. No sooner, however, bad they gratified their passion, than they repented of their rashness, and raised an konorable monument to his memory. A. D. 282.-Year of Rome 1035.

12. Without reference to the senate, the army unanimously appointed Carus, prefect of the prætorian guard, as the successor of Probus. He associated with himself in the government his two sons, Carinus and Numerian, and conferred upon them the title of Cæsar. Carinus he directed to suppress some troubles that had arisen in Gaul, and then to take up his residence at Rome, and assume the goveroment of the western provinces. Carus, with his younger on, Numerian, after having defeated the Sarmatians, who had threatened the safety of Illyrium, marched to the confines of Persia, where some attempts had been made to resist the Roman power.

13. The Persian monarch, alarmed at the near approach of the Roman army, sent ambassadors to their camp to propose terms of peace. On desiring to be taken into the presence of the emperor, they were led to a spot where a soldier, seated on the grass, was partaking of a frugal supper of stale bacon and peas. The only mark by which

they could distinguish him as the emperor, was a coarted garment of purple. In answer to their proposals, Carue, took off a cap which he wore, and showing them his bald, head, assured them that unless the Persians submitted unconditionally to the superiority of the Romans, he would, leave their country as destitute of trees as his head was of hair.

der

the

unit

nés

stat

ber

con

sch

boy

cho:

oft

pos

title

was

NICO

lost

ple,

edit

with

the

offic

to h

202

WITE !!

-12.1

1

14. His threats were carried into execution. He ravaged their country, and took possession of the great cities of Ctesiphon and Selucia. But a sudden and awfuldeath soon put an end to his triumphs. While confined to his tent by sickness, he was killed by lightning, in the midst of a violent tempest. His sons Carinus and Numerian succeeded him. The weakness of Numerian, and the superstition of the soldiers, who looked upon every place or person struck by lightning with pious horror, prevented the prosecution of the war, and they prepared to leave Asia.

15. A disease of the eye, which the intense heat of the climate had brought upon Numerian, was so aggravated by the tears which he shed after the death of his father, that he was at length obliged to confine himself to a dark tent or litter. Business was conducted in his name by his father-in-law. Asper, præfect of the prætorian guards, This continued for some time, until the suspicions of the soldiers being excited, the litter was torn open, and the body of Numerian found in such a state of decay as to render it certain that he must have been dead some days.

16. The concealment of his death, at once fixed the suspicion of the soldiers upon Asper, and he was accused of having murdered the emperor, and placed in chains. An assembly of the whole army was then called at Chal-

ledon; and Diocletian, commander of the body guards, was declared emperor. He, taking his place on the tribunal, summoned Asper before him, and without giving him time to say anything in his own defence, plunged his sword into his heart, exclaiming, "This man is the murderer of Numerian."

17. In the mean time, Carinus had given himself up to the indulgence of vicious pleasures. He is said to have united the cruelty of Nero and Domitian with the weakness and folly of Heliogabalus. Raised from a humble station to the dignity of emperor, he hated all who remembered the obscurity of his origin, or censured his present conduct; and with the meanest revenge, punished his schoolfellows and companions for injuries done him in his boyhood. He treated the senators with contempt, and chose his favorites and even his ministers from the lowest of the people.

18. When Diocletian was proclaimed emperor, Carinus possessed arms and treasures sufficient to support his title to the throne. The army of Diocletian was wasted by disease and war, and he had little hope of success. But the weakness and follies of Carinus had lost for him the affection both of the senate and people, and his soldiers in some measure shared their discontent. Before any decisive step had been taken by either party, however, an end was put to the struggle by the death of Carinus. He was killed by one of his own officers, in revenge of an insult sometime before offered to his family. A. D. 284.—Year of Rome 1037.

H 2

counter Carue is bald is bald would would was of

In Hes

a great awful onfined in the Numeand the place vented leave

of the avated futher, a darkme by uards, of the as to days. d the cused hains. Chal-

1.02

Questions on Chapter Twenty-fifth.

	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1.	What time elapsed before the choice of another emperor 1 What
	is suid of the army ?
	What did they do ?
2.	What is said of the Senators ?
	Who was at last chosen ? What is said of Tacitus ?
	What is said of his administration ?
	What of his love of learning ? What of his tastes ?
	What is said of the Alani?
	What of the success of Tacitus ?
	What of his death ?
5.	Who caused himself to be declared emperor?
	What is said of Probus ? What was the fate of Florian ?
5.	What was the age of Probus, and what is said of him ? What
	of the Senate ?
7.	What is said of the barbarians ?
-	What of the Garman minuos 1
	What was one of the terms of peace ?
8.	What rebellions took place at home ?
	What rendered the triumph of Probus memorable ? Describe.
•	the conduct of the gladistors ? What was their fate ?
n.	What is said of the military discipline of Probus? What did
	he accomplish by means of the soldiers ?
۱.	What caused the death of Probus ?
	Who was appointed his successor ?
-	Whom did he associate with himself in the government? What
	is said of Carinus? What of Carus and his younger som
	Numerian ?
2	What is said of the Fersian monarch ?
J.	How did the ambassadors find the emperor employed ?
1	What reply did he make to the proposals of peace ? What followed ? What put an end to his triumphs * Who
· • •	what innowed a what put an end to ms trumphs + who
	succeeded him ?
	What prevented the continuance of the war ?
υ.	vy nac is said of 14 dilightsh i
,	By whom was business transacted ?
~	What did the soldiers at last do?
0.	What is said of Asper ? Who was declared emperor ? What
	did he do ?
7.	What of Carinus in the meantime?
	What was his character ?
8.	What is said of the strength of Carinus ?
	What of the army of Dioeletian ?
	What put an end to the struggie ?
	ž)ásy
	1105C *
	free

What's

41

1. suppo house afterv office other town prom he so promo consul palace 2. by th His a disgra grant into | findir born Max mean west 3 ente disti emp to c

178

y.

1 2 1

Vbat

ili iti

528

Vhul

VIOX

1459

ribe

did

. Sale

hat.

BOR-

22.823

Tho-

13:27

find

10d

103:

.9772

119

15

en

63

CHAPTER XXVI.

1 margan of BR Son V

FROM THE DEATH OF CARINUS, TO THE DEATH OF GALERIUS. A. D. 284 TO 311.-YRAR OF RQME 1037 TO 1064.

1. Little is known of the origin of Diocletian. It is supposed that his parents were at one time slaves in the house of Anulinus, a Roman senator, and that his father afterwards, having obtained his freedom, acquired the office of scribe. It is certain that he was known by no other name than that obtained from Dioclea, a small town in Dalmatia, in which he was born. Ambition prompted him to follow the profession of arms, in which he soon distinguished himself. He was successively promoted to the government of Masca, the honors of the consulship, and the chief command of the guards of the palace.

2. At the death of Numerian, none was considered by the soldiers more worthy of the throne than Diocletian. His accession was followed by none of the horrors which disgraced so many of his predecessors. He at once granted free pardon to all who had opposed him, and took into his confidence many of the friends of Carus. Soon finding the burden of the cares of empire too heavy to be borne alone, he associated with himself in the government Maximian, long his friend and fellow soldier; by this mean providing for the good government of both east and west.

3. Maximian was born a peasant. He had early entered the army, and in the course of a long service had distinguished himself on almost every frontier in the empire; and his courage and experience well fitted him to oppose successfully the enemies of his country. He

was cruel in his disposition, ignorant of letters, and even in his elevated station betrayed, by the rudeness of his manners, the meanness of his origin. Yet, although in all those respects differing from Diocletian, during the whole of their long reign there existed entire confidence and harmony between them.

4. The first expedition of Maximian was against the peasants of Gaul, who, weary of the complicated tyranny of their masters, of the barbarians, of the soldiers, and of the officers of the revenue, had risen in a general rebellion. Scarcely were they subdued, when the usurpation of Caransius, in Britain, rendered it necessary that the new emperor should turn his attention thither. Caransius, a a man of obscure origin, but a skilful pilot and a brave soldier, had been placed in command of a fleet which had been fitted out against the Franks, whose incursions on the provinces adjoining the ocean, had for sometime been frequent and disastrous.

5. He soon proved humself unworthy of the trust reposed in him. He permitted the pirates to leave their own harbors and ravage the neighboring coasts unmolested; but intercepted them on their return, and appropriated to his own use a great part of the booty they had obtained: In order to escape the merited vengeance of the emperors, he retired to Britain. Here, by his gifts, he secured the soldiers to his interests, and boldly assumed the government of the island, with the title of Augustus. He retained the sovereignty seven years, when he was put to death by his own officers.

6. In the meantime, the two emperors, finding that the safety of the empire required the presence of an army on every frontier, had associated with themselves in the Maxi Dioc mild daugh of Br and and th ed to vince 7. OTS WE rectio wester He su moved 8. Egyp city o tants Copto After and p tian p part o . 9. with] had b his- na groan of Ti

lė

nd

he

oy.

of

10.

of

ew

12

TÈ

ad

the

re-

WD.

d; to

:d: 15,

12

ed

bÿ ad

No

OR

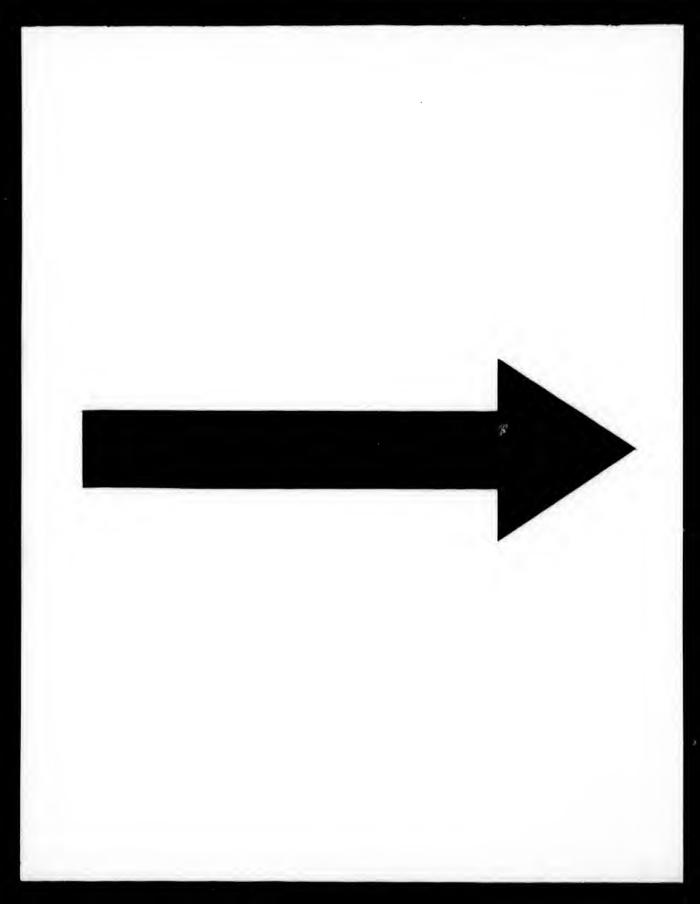
ĝa

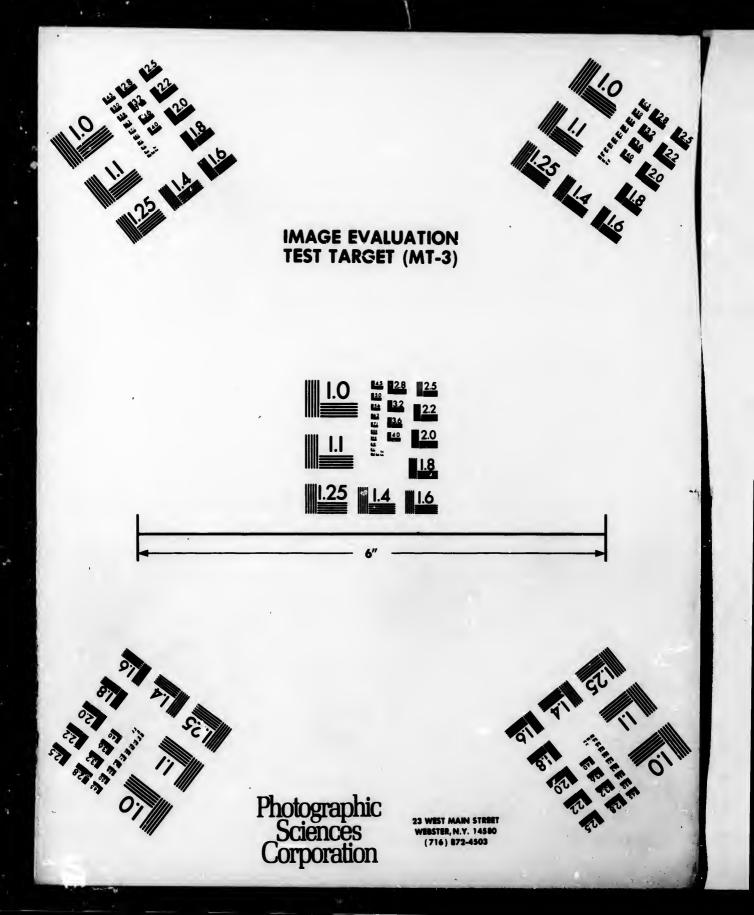
government two others, Galerius and Constantius, with the inferior title of Cæser. Galerius, who resembled Maximian in disposition and manners, was adopted by Diocletian, while Maximian receinto his family the mild and gentle Constantius. Into his family the meror gave a daughter in marriage to his ad of Britain, Gaul, and Spain, was given to Constantius, and Galerius was stationed on the Danube ; Italy and the greater part of the African provinces were assigned to Maximian, while Egypt, Thrace, and the rich provinces of Asia fell to the lot of Diocletian.

7. It was not long before the presence of both emperors was needed in Africa, where in every province insurrections had arisen. Maximian directed his course to the western provinces, where his arms were entirely successful. He subdued the fierce barbarians of Mauratunia, and removed them from their native mountains.

8. Diocletian, in the mean time, had proceeded to Egypt. After a close seige of eight months, he took the city of Alexandria, and caused thousands of the inhabitants to be put to the sword. The magnificent cities of Coptos and Busiris were utterly destroyed by his order. After the exercise of much severity, Egypt was subdued, and peace restored; and by many wise regulations, Diocletian provided for the future safety and prosperity of that part of the empire.

9. The reduction of Egypt was soon followed by a war with Persia. Tiridates, son of the late king of Armenia, had been promoted by the emperor to the government of his native country. Armenia had for several years been groaning under the tyranny of the Persians; and the arrival of Tiridates on their frontier, was hailed by the Armenian







182

nobles with joy. They joined him in great numbers, and for some time fortune seemed favorable to his cause. But the Persians, who had long been divided by civil wars, now united their forces against the enemy, and Tiridates was obliged to take refuge in the court of Diocletian.

10. It was now determined to exert all the power of the empire against the Persians. Diocletian took his station in Antioch, and Galerius was removed from the Danube to take command of the eastern army. The two first battles were indecisive, but in the third Galerius suffered a total Tiridates only escaped falling into the hands of defeat. the victorious enemy by plunging with his armour into the Euphrates. His strength and dexterity enabled him to reach the opposite bank in safety, though the river was deep and rapid, and in that place half a mile in breadth. Galerius, after this defeat, was received by Diocletian with all the indignation of an offended sovereign. He was compelled to follow the emperor's chariot more than a mile on foot, and to exhibit before the whole court the spectacle of his disgrace.

11. Being permitted an opportunity of retrieving his own honor and that of the Roman arms, Galerius led a second army against the Persians. In this attempt he was successful. Coming upon them at night, when they were taken by surprise, a total rout ensued. The army of Narses, who commanded them, was dispersed, and the immense wealth found in their tents, together with many of the wives and children of the Persian king, fell into the hands of the Romans. A peace was soon after concluded, on terms favorable to the empire, and Tiridates was restored to the throne of his father.

12. An incident took place after this victory, which

we fille sol COD pos tion Dio afte men Mar refus stary refug cutio repre pollu to de so ma from subje ears o limbs 14. which he con allegia the C sisting refuse ordere

sho

shows how unaccustomed the Roman legions at this time were to the superfluities of life. A bag of shining leather filled with pearls, having fallen into the hands of a common soldier, he carefully preserved the bag, but threw away its contents, judging that what could be of no use could not possibly be of any value.

ď

ut

W

85

of

on

ibe

at-

tal

of

the

a to

was

dth.

with

was

mile

cta-

his

ed a

Was

rere

Nar-

im-

y of

the

ded,

tor-

hich

13. During this reign occurred the last great persecution of the Christians. On first coming to the throne, Diocletian had shown himself favorable to them, but soon after Maximian became associated with him in the government, a violent persecution was raised against them. Many were killed with the most fearful tortures. Others, refusing to eat meat which had been offered to idols, were starved to death. Many, forsaking their homes, took refuge in caves and forests, till the violence of the persecution abated. At last several governors of the provinces represented to the imperial Court that "it was unfit to pollute the cities with the blood of so many inhabitants, or to defend the government of the emperors by the death of so many of their subjects." Hence many were respited from execution, but although not put to death, they were subjected to every species of indignity. Numbers had their ears cut off, their noses slit, their right eyes put out, their limbs dislocated, and their flesh seared with red hot irons.

14. At one time Maximian appointed a sacrifice at which all the army was to assist; and at the same time he commanded that every soldier should take the oath of allegiance, and swear to assist him in the extirpation of the Christians from Gaul. This command a legion, consisting of six thousand six hundred and sixty-six Christians, refused to obey. Maximian, enraged at their refusal, ordered that every tenth man of them should be killed.

of

T

Se

tiu

fift

hat

firs

Co

Ser

with

bey

for

the

This

leav

the p

the

them

many

in R

enen

the t

the d

Max

oblig

mian.

Faus

assist

son.

18

The remainder still continued to be firm in their refusal, and the order was repeated and obeyed. The soldiera still preserved their principles and their fortitude, and drew up a memorial, in which they assured the emperor of their loyalty, and entreated him to withdraw a command, obedience to which would involve the violation of the higher command of God They confessed themselves Christians, and still refused either to spill the blood of their fellows, or sacrifice to idols. Instead of being softened by this appeal, Maximian, stung to madness by their continued resistance, ordered the whole legion to be put to death, and his order was instantly obeyed.

15. In the twentieth year of their reign, the two emperors celebrated the success of their arms by the pomp of a triumph, memorable as being the last ever witnessed. in Rome. In the twenty-first year of his reign, Diocletian put into execution the design he had for some time entertained, of resigning the dignities of empire; an action for which historians have found it difficult to assign On the same day, as d been previously a motive. concerted, Maximian resigned the superial dignity at Diocletian took up his residence in Salona, Milan. where he spent the remainder of his life in dignified retirement. Maximian retired to a villa in Lucania but his restless spirit failed to find tranquility in his solitude, and the succeeding reign was disturbed by his efforts to resume his former power. A. D. 305 .- Year of Rome 1058.

16. Upon the abdication of the two emperors, Galerius and Constantius succeeded, without opposition, to the empire. Constantius reigned over the western part, including Britain, Gaul, Spain, Italy, and the greater part

Sa

iers

and

IO13

om-

n of

lves

1° of

soft-

their

put

omp

essed

ocle-

time

an

ssign

ously

y, at

lona,

nified

but

tude,

rts to

Rome

Gale-

b the

part.

part

- 10' em-

of Africa. Galerins assumed the sovereignty of the east-They associated with themselves in the government. Severus and Maximin, with the title of Cæsar. Constantius survived his elevation to the imperial dignity only fifteen months. He died in the palace of York, in Britain, having named as his successor Constantine, a son by his first marriage.

17. Instead, however, of acknowledging the claim of Constantine, Galerius bestowed the title of Augustus upon Severus; and Constantine for a time remained content with the title of Cæsar and the government of the provinces beyond the Alps. In the meantime, another aspirant for power appeared in the person of Maxentius, son of the late emperor Maximian, and son in law of Galerius. This conspiracy was countenanced by Maximian, who, leaving his hated retirement, returned to Rome, where at the request of his son and the senate, he again assumed the imperial purple.

18. Severus immediately marched to Rome to oppose them, but all his attempts failed; and being deserted by many of his soldiers, he was obliged at last to take refuge in Ravenna. Soon after, falling into the hands of his enemies, he was put to death by order of Maximian.

19. Galerius, having bestowed upon his friend Licinius the title of Augustus, hastened towards Rome, to avenge the death of Severus. But being powerfully opposed by Maxentius, and deserted by many of his soldiers, he was obliged to retire again to the eastern provinces. Maximiao, in the meantime, having bestowed his daughter Fausta in marriage upon Constantine, sought to obtain his assistance in securing the whole empire to himself and his son. This, however, from motives of prudence, Constantine refused to grant, and remained quietly in his own government beyond the Alps.

20. The father and son did not long share in barmony the power which they had acquired. Maxentius refused to submit to the controul of his father, who arrogantly declared that it was only through his name and abilities that his son had obtained the throne of Italy. Their cause was solemnly pleaded before the prætorian generals. They, dreading the severity of the old emperor, declared in favor of Maxentius, and Maximian was obliged to seek refuge in the court of Constantine. There his restless spirit was still the cause of mischief. During the absence of Constantine on an expedition against the Franks, Maximian caused a report of his death to be spread, and himself assumed the authority. The return of Constantine, however, soon put an end to his usurpation, and being permitted to choose the manner of his death, it is said that he strangled himself with his own hands.

21. The last years of Galerius were less shameful and unfortunate. He survived his retreat from Italy four years, and wisely giving up the thought of universal empire, devoted the remainder of his life to the enjoyment of pleasure and the execution of works of utility.¹⁷ He died of a lingering and painful disease, after having enjoy; ed the title of Augustus six years. A. D. 311, year of Rome 1064.

Questions on Chapter Twenty-sixth.

- 1. What is said of the origin of Diocletian ? What of his ambition ?
 - To what honors was he promoted ?
- 2. What is said of his accession ? Whom did be associate with himself in the government t

186

21.

3.

4.

5.

rit

8.

7.

8.

. 9.

10.

17:

11. od -

12.

13.

ante -

2.2

14.

He

180

10 .

17.

18.

19.

20.

21, 841

- 17

3. What is said of Maximian ? BTO What of his disposition ? What of the harmony that existed between the emperors ? 4. Against whom was the first expedition of Maximian ? What is rannius ? 5. What did he permit ? Where did he go to escape the vengence of the emperor ? What did he do? How long did he retain the sovereignty ? 6. Whom did the emperors associate with themselves in the govern-.i.... ment ? What is said of Galerius ? What of Constantine ? How was the empire divided ? 7. Where was the presence of the two emperors soon required ? Where did Maximian direct his course? What was his suc-2092 1 cess ? 8. What of Diocletian in the meantime ? What of Alexandria, Coptos and Busiris ? 9. What war followed ? What of Tiridates ? Who were successful ? 10. What was now determined ? Who took command of the army? Who was defeated in the third battle ? How did Tiridates cscape ? What is said of Galerius ?. 11. What is said of his next attempt ? off What of the peace ? 12. Mention an incldent which took place after the battle f 13. What occurred during this reign ? Mention some particulars of this persecution ? What did the governors represent to the emperor ? What followed ? 14. Relate the account given of the Christian legion ? 15. What happened in the twentieth year of his reign ' What in the twenty-first ? off Where did Diocletian spend the last part of his life ? What is said of Maximian ? 18. Who succeeded to the empire ? to Whom did they associate with them ? What is said of the death of Constantius ? 17. What is said of Galerius ? What of Constantius ? What other aspirant for power appeared ? Who countenanced this conspiracy ? 18. What is said of Severus ? What of his death ? 19. What did Galerius do ? Was he successful ? What of Mazimian ? What of Constantine ? 20. What is said of the father and son ? How was their cause decided ? What of Maximian in the court of Constantine ? What was his fate ?

21. What is said of Galerius ? What of his death ?

êm-

IODY

used

ntly

ities

heir

rals.

ared seek tless abinks. . and tine. perat be 12

and four

em-

ment

He

njoyir of

8 .51

1 21

7 . 15

1.61

213. 1

CHAPTER XXVII.

THE BRIGN OF CONSTANTINE, A. D. 311 TO 337 .-- YEAR OF BOME 1064 TO 1090.

1. After the death of Galerius, the empire enjoyed a brief interval of tranquility. Constantine retained undiaturbed possession of the provinces beyond the Alps; Licinius and Maximin were supreme in the east; while Italy for a time groaned under the tyrany of Maxentus. At length, disgusted with his cruelty, rapacity, and profilgacy, as seen in contrast with the virtues of Constantine, the senate and people of Rome privately sent ambassadors to the latter, entreating him to come and deliver their country from the yoke of the tyrant. With these entreaties Constantine did not hesitate to comply, and leaving half his army to defend the provinces of the Rhine from the frequent incursions of the barbarians, he prepared with about forty thousand men to cross the Alps.

2. It was while advancing on this expedition, that Constantine is said to have witnessed the supernatural appearance which induced him to embrace Christianity, and establish it henceforth as the religion of the empire. While meditating one evening in his tent upon the dangers which surrounded him, and praying for divine guidance and protection amidst them, there is said to have appeared over against him in the heavens a pillar of light, in the form of, a cross, bearing the inscription, "By this overcome." Those who were attached to paganism looked upon this as a most inauspicious omen; but it made a different impresision on the mind of the emperor. He caused a royal standard to be made, like the appearance he had seen in the heavens. This was always carried before him in his

T. So tion had Ro had pra the and and exp - 4 mor ing with of] liger defe adva calle draw Cou was stant 5. tion destr were front with inter

1347.04

wars, as an ensign of victory, and celestial protection. Soon after this, he publicly professed Christianity.

17

1030

.....

lis-

15 ;

nilo

us.

ga-

the

to

un-

ties

half

the

vith

32

on-

ear-

and

ire.

ers.

and,

ver

a of

le."

s as

rest

byal

n in,

his

141.24

3. In the meantime, Maxentius began to make preparations to oppose him. Although by his follies and vices he had alienated the affections of the senate and people of Rome, he had still an immense army at his command. He had greatly increased the number and privileges of the prestorian guards, and honor as well as interest attached them to his cause. His army amounted to one hundred and seventy thousand foot, and eighteen thousand horse, and the wealth of all Italy was made use of to snpply the expenses of the war.

4. But the courage and military skill of Constantine more than made up for the inferiority of his army. Having secured the friendship of Licinius, he crossed the Alpa with such rapidity that he had descended into the plains of Italy before Maxentius had received any certain intelligence of his departure from the banks of the Rhine. He defeated the generals of Maxentius in several battles, and advanced to within nine miles of Rome. Here, at a place called Saxa Rubra, he found the army of Maxentius drawn up to receieve him. A bloody battle ensued, in which Constantine was again completely victorious. Maxentius was drowned in attempting to cross the Tiber, and Constantine found himself without a rival in Rome.

5. One of the first acts of Constantine was the abolition of the prætorian guards. Their fortified camp was destroyed, and the few who had survived the last battle were dispersed among the legions, and sent to the various frontiers of the empire, where they could be made useful without again becoming dangerous. He spent the short interval of peace which occurred, in redressing the griev-

oft

with

byl

in y

80D

com

supe

he s

01 S

the

defe

He

Con

conq

spare

a co

with

Year

Afte

adva

to pr

estat

tion

a sea

empe

ted

youth

with

of the

LUT

611

10

9

acces of the Christians, and in promoting the interests of religion, and the revival of letters. The repose of the empire was, however, soon disturbed by an attempt made by Maximin to obtain sole sovereignty of the east. In the civil war which took place, Licinius was victorious, and Maximin survived his fall only a few months. A. D. 313.—Year of Rome 1066.

6. Constantine and Licinius being now sole masters of the Roman world, it might have been supposed that each would endeavour to secure the prosperity of his own share of the empire, without molesting the other. But the ambition which aimed at a part, could not rest contented with less than the whole, and the arms of the victorious emperors were soon turned against each other. The first battle that took place between them was indecisive. In the second, Licinius was defeated, and reduced to such straits as to wish for a termination of the war. A treaty was soon after concluded between them, by which a part of the eastern empire was ceded to Constantine.

7. During the six years that this peace lasted, Constantine employed himself in advancing the civil and religious interests of the empire, and in repelling various incursions of the barbarians. At the close of this period, hostilities were renewed by Constantine. Licinius, though, now advanced in years, soon collected an immense army, and on the plains near Adrianople, awaited the arrival of his opponent. Here, after several indecisive skirmiahes, a battle was fought, in which Constantine obtained a complete victory, and Licinius was obliged to retire to Byrantium.

8. The siege of this strongly fortified city Constantine, at once commenced. He constructed artificial mounds

pł

be

de

In

nd

D.

of

ich

are

100-

rith

em-

Grst

In

uch

eaty

Dart

on-

and

ious

iod,

ugb.

my,

l of

5,,8

om-

By-ar

tine

mde

of the same height as its towers, and galled the beseiged with large stones and dust from his military engines, and by his battering rams soon succeeded in shaking the walls in various places. In the mean time, Crispus, the eldest son of Constantine, who had been placed by his father in command of the fleet, gained a complete victory over the superior naval force of the enemy, and Licinius, fearing lest he should be surrounded, prudently retired to Chalcedon.

9. He soon succeeded in raising another army of fifty or sixty thousand men. Near the heights of Chrysopolis the rivals again met, and again Licinius suffered a total defeat, with the loss of twenty five thousand of his army. He retired to Nicomedia, and through the intercession of Constantia, his wife, and the sister of Constantine, the conqueror was induced to promise that his life should be spared. Soon after, however, being suspected of forming a conspiracy and holding a treasonable correspondence with the barbarians, he was put to death. A. D. 324.— Year of R. 1077.

10 Constantine now found himself without a rival. After the restoration of peace, he devoted himself to the advancement of such measures as seemed best calculated to promote the good of the empire. He proceeded to establish religion on so firm a basis, that no future revolution should be able to shake it. His vast empire enjoyed a season of comparative tranquility, but the peace of the emperor was disturbed by trials of a domestic nature.

11. Crispus, his eldest by his first marriage, is represented by impartial historians as an amiable and accomplished youth. At the age, of seventeen, he had been invested. with the title of Cæsar, and appointed to the government of the Gallic provinces, where by his skill and courage be

had distinguished himself in various wars with the Germans. The victory gained by him over the naval force of Licinius, had greatly hastened the termination of the war, and his name was united with that of Constantine in the joyful acclamations of his eastern subjects. The many excellencies of his character deserved the esteem and engaged the affections of the court, the army, and the people.

ch

up

wa

lin

of

att

72

dire

his

ven

mos

to a

guid

hone

pead

tieth

He

whe

bath

acco

ple.

enjoy

lame

differ

write

16

1

12. Through the machinations of the empress Fausta, Constantine was induced to condemn Crispus to death. Nor was the falsehood of her accusations discovered till the sentence had been carried into execution. Nothing could exceed the grief and remorae of the empcror when the treachery of Fausta was discovered, and she suffered death as the penalty of her crime. A golden statue to his memory is said to have been erected at the command of Constantine, bearing this inscription, "To my son, whom I unjustly condemned."

13. Constantine had spent the greater part of his reign at the head of his army. Up to the time when the abdication and death of Licinius had left him sole master of the empire, he had no settled place of residence, but stationed himself in that part of his vast dominions which seemed most to require his presence. He now, however, resolved to fix permanently the seat of his government, and build a city which should perpetuate the glory of his name. During no part of his life had he resided in Rome. His visits there, since he became emperor, had been short and made at long intervals, so that he had no prepossessions in favor of that city, and he therefore determined to remove the seat of the empire to Byzantium. The advantages of that city, both for defense and for the purposes of commerce, could not be surpassed, and its position on

the confines of Asia and Europe, seemed to point it out as the best place for the residence of one who was to occupy the throne of both the eastern and western empires.

no nd

inins

d Ma

oyful

llen-

d the

usta.

eath.

đ till

thing

when

ered

te to

nand

son,

eign

ıbdi-

r of

but

hich

ver,

nent,

f his

ome.

hort

sses-

d to

ad-

oses

n on

14. It is said that the emperor was guided in this choice by a supernatural power. He had at first fixed upon Chalcedon as the site of the new city, but while he was laying out the ground plan, an eagle caught up the line, and flew with it to Byzantiun, on the opposite side The fixing of its boundaries, was of the Bosphorus. attended with great pomp and ceremony. The emperor walked at the head of a splendid procession, and himself directed the line which was to mark its extent. At length his attendants, astonished at its growing circumference, ventured to observe, that he had already exceeded the most ample measure of a large city. "I shall continue to advance," replied Constantine, " till He, the iavisible guide who marches before me, thinks proper to stop." In honor of its founder, this city was called Constantinople.

15. The latter part of the reign of Constantine was peaceful and splendid. Soon after celebrating the thirtieth annversary of his reign, his health hegan to decline. He died of fever in a palace in the suburbs of Nicomedia, whether he had gone for the benefit of the air and the baths, in the sisty-fourth year of his age. His body, according to his own request, was carried to Constantinople. No emperor, since the time of Augustus, had enjoyed so long and so splendid a reign. His death was lamented by all classes throughout his yast empire.

16. With regard to the character of Constantine, very different opinions have been maintained. The Christian writers of that time adors it with all the virtues of a hero and a saint; while those of the vanquished party speak of him as a weak and vicious tyrant. That his talents were of a high order, and that he possessed many virtues cannot be denied; but he is justly accused during the latter part of his reign of indulging in the opposite vices of rapacity and prodigality.

Questions on Chapter Twenty-Seventh.

1	How was the empire divided 1	8
2	What is said of the Senate and people of Rome ?	
	What did Constantine do ?	\$J. 18.2.5
2.	What is said of the supernatural appearance with	eased by Con-
	stantine ?	
5	What did he cause ?	2 2 1 1
3.	What of Maxentius in the meantime 1	-£, 10 £
<u>.</u> []	What of the pretorian guards ?	· :
7.4	What was the number of his army ?	
	What is said of Constantine ?	A 10% 151
i de		· · · · · · · · · · · ·
, ⁿ r	Where did he meet the army of Maxentius ? I torious ?	Who was vic-
-	What was the fate of Maxentius 1	i weit
5.	What was one of the first acts of Constantine 1	4
h	How did he spend the interval of peace ?	1. 1.
	What is said of Licinius and Maximin ?	01 6
	What is said of the ambition of Constantine and I	Licinius T
	Who was defeated ? - What treaty was made ?	the lat
4.	What is said of the six years that followed ?	ces bey all
e .	Where did Licinius await the coming of his rival	4
	Who was vistorious ?	
	Where did Licinius retire 1	tablieb.
8.	What is said of the siege of Byzantium 1	Stomes
	What of Crispus ?	
¥	Where did Licinius go 1	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
9.	What of his next army ?	ford to
	What was the fate of the battle ?	
	Through whose intercession was his life spared t.	republic
	» What was his fate T	17 70 4 Stil
	What is said of religion 1	
	What is said of Crispus ?	for a light
12.	What is said of Fausta ?	Armenta .
	What of the grief and remorse of Constantine ?	

0 0 th w th

of the contract of the contrac

th fo

V

12. What is said of Constantine previous to the death of Linicius 1. What did he now determine ?

and What is said of Byzantium ?

14. How is it said the emperor was guided in his choice ? What is said of fixing the boundaries ?

15. What of the last part of the reign of Constantine 1 What is said of his death ? How long had he reigned ?

16. What different opinions have been maintained with regard to the character of Constantine ?

CHAPTER XXVIII.

FROM THE DEATH OF CONSTANTINE TO THE DESTRUCTION OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE. A. D 337 TO 476. YEAR OF ROME. 109) TO 1229.

1. After the death of Constantine, the power and glory of the Roman empire rapidly declined. During the whole of the long reign of Constantius, his immediate successor, the eastern empire was disturbed by a war with Persia; while the frequent incursions of the barbarians, filled the the west with bloodshed and misery.

2. Julian, the grandson of Constantine, and the nephew of Constantius, succeeded to the empire on the death of the latter. He had for some time governed in the provinces beyond the Alps, with the title of Cæsar. His apostacy from the Christian religion, and his attempts to re-establish paganism, have tarnished the lustre of Julian's But he was a brave prince, and his brief reign name. of one year and eight months served a little to retard the progress of decay. He was successful in repelling the incursions of the northern barbarians. In the war which he carried on with Persia, his arms were for a time triumphant, but the treachery of the king of Armenia, and the destruction of his magazines, turned the

barty at his many during posite 117 129

A. Broke &

y Con-

110

MA TIC-

sisti at

io in

(i. su) 1.893

1367

table

+inca

0 10

12.201

59952

: stit

for a

ATTA

of

fel

ing ten

ha

Th

agi

tion

to.

132 mu

and

cou

bis

Th

Fig]

him

Are

fifti

yea

divi

time

ONG

emp

Ç

of a

whi

ben

2.8

the

We

fortune of the war, and he was obliged to withdraw his forces towards the west. During this retreat, a battle took place, in which Julian received a mortal wound, in the thirty-second year of his age. A. D. 363 .- Year of Rome 1116.

3. The reign of Jovian, the successor of Julian, was short and inglorious. He was succeeded by Valentinian, the son of Gratian, a man of undaunted spirit and vigorous He associated with himself his brother Valens, and mind. bestowed upon him the government of the east, with the capitol of Constantinople ; while he himself, took possession of the western empire, and fixed his residence at Milan. During this reign, which lasted twelve years, war was carried on in all quarters of the empire, and the energetic measures of Valentinian served in some measure to protect his dominions from the incursions of the barbarians. He was succeeded by his sons Gratian and Valentinian the Second. A. D. 375.-Year of Rome 1128.

4. Although Gratian was only seventeen years of age at the death of his father, he soon showed by his conduct that he was worthy to succeed him. He defeated and drove back the barbarians, who had advanced across the Rhine into his dominions ; and when Valens soon after fell. in an unsuccessful attempt against the Goths, he prudently associated with himself in the government Theodosius, afterwards surnamed the Great. By the prudence of his measures, rather than by the terror of his arms, Theodocius subdued the Goths, and within four years of the death of Valens, all the tribes of that warlike nation were in alliance with the Romans.

5. During the last years of his life, Gratian ceased to practice those virtues which had at first won the esteem

his

ok

the

me

和關係

ms

an:

ous

ind

the

ion

an.

ar-

tic

ro-

ns.

the

116

age

luct

and

the

elt.

New York

1119

his

do-

ath

in

to

em

197

ł

of his subjects. After a reign of eight years, he fell a victim to the ambition of Maximus, who, after assuming the power in Britain, invaded Gaul. Instead of attempting to revenge the death of his colleague, the exhausted resources of the east rendered it necessary for Theodosius to treat with the usurper. He, therefore, agreed to acknowledge the claims of Maximus, on condition that Valentinian, the brother of Gratian, was allowed to remain unmolested in the possession of Italy.

6. This condition was, however, little heeded by Maximus, who soon after advanced into Italy, and Valentinian and his mother Justina were obliged to take refuge in the court of Theodosius. But the usurper did not long enjoy his triumph. He was defeated and slain by the army of Theodosius, and Valentinian was again restored to his rights. His death occuring soon after, Theodosius found himself sole ruler of the empire. He appointed his sons, Arcadius and Honorius, his successors, and died in the fiftieth year of his age, after a prosperous reign of sixteen years.—A. D. 395.—Year of Rome 1148.

7. From this time, the two empires were permanently divided. Arcadius, who was eighteen years of age at the time of his accession to the empire, reigned fourteen years over the empire of the east. He assumed the title of emperor of the Romans, with the hereditary names of Casar and Augustus. His form of government was that of a simple monarchy, and the name of Roman Republic, which had so long preserved the memory of freedom, was henceforth confined to the provinces of the west.

8. At the age of eleven years, Honorius succeeded to the throne of the western empire. His reign lasted tweaty-eight years, but such was his indolence and incena-

12

A

te

8.71

cui

the

we

les

1雪

dia

spr

sie

his

the

pro

the

no:

£13.

lofi

dis

the

SCA

ine

bar

hid

rici

che

hele

toil

Rí

rài

200

clo

cloid diols

city, that it is scarcely necessary to mention his name during the whole of that eventful period. For a time, the valor and abilities of his general Stilicho more than supe plied the difficiencies of the emperor. He repelled the barbarians, who after the death of Theodosius threatened to overrun the whole empire.

9. It was during this reign, that the various invasions of Italy by the Goths, under Alaric their king, took place. Their arms were at first directed against the empire of the east. From the immediate neighborhood of Constantinople they passed through the straits of 'Thermopylas into Greece, carrying death and desolation in their train. Here their progress was for some time arrested by Stilicho. who defeated them in battle; but soon after Alaric with an immense army penetrated into the heart of Italy. On his approach toward Milan, Honorius fled, and took refuge in the small fortification of Asta, which the barbarians immediately invested. But the valor of Stilicho again saved Italy for a time. With an army hastily collected. from the provinces beyond the Alps, he met and defeated the host of Alaric, and obliged that warlike monarch to submit to conditions of peace. A. D. 403 .- Year of Rome 1156. Aline were set is an including the

10. Scarcely had the departure of Alaric calmed the fears of Honorius and his court, when another and more formidable enemy appeared almost at the gates of Resets The Huns, driven from their forests and mountains by the victorious barbarians of the north, in their turn dislodged the numerous tribes of the Suevi, the Vandals, and the Burgundians, who to the number of four hundred thousand, including women and children, under Radagainus, the leader, descended into the fertile plains of Italy. They

adt

1. 20

nd i

e.

of

Det.

100%

in.

ith

On

Ige

ins ain

ted

ted

to

cof

tad

think form

ted.

1

àd.

cio

had already invested the city of Florence and reduced it to the last extremity, when Stilicho, having reinforced his army, appeared for its relief. By surrounding them, and cutting off their supplies of provisions, he soon reduced the vast multitude to such straits by famine, that they were obliged to accept his terms and leave Italy, having lest Radagaisus and more than one third of their number. 11. Soon after this, Stilicho fell a victim to the suspicion and jealousy of his weak master, and again the Goths spread themselves over Italy. Without attempting the siege of Ravenna, where Honorius had fixed the seat of his court, Alaric marched direct to Rome. By guarding the navigation of the Tiber, and cutting off all supplies of provisions from the adjacent country, he soon brought on the inhabitants all the miseries of famine, and left them no alternative but to sue for peace.

eo12. The ambassadors sent to Alarie, at first assumed a lofty tone, and warned him against driving the Romans to dispair, saying, that unless honorable terms were given. the beseiged would sally forth in a body, when they could scarcely fail to overpower their enemies. " The thicker the grass, the casier it is cut," was the cool reply of the barbarian, and he at last condescended to fix the terms of his retreat at all the gold and silver in the city, all the nich moveables, and all the slaves who could prove their chain to the name of barbarian. " If such," said the ambeissdors, "O king, be your demands, what do you intend to leave us ?" " Your lives," replied the haughty conqueror. But his demands gradually relaxed, and he was induced to raise the siege on the immediate payment of five thousand pounds of gold, three thousand pounds of silver, four thoumid robes of silk; three thousand pieces of fine scarlet cloth, and three thousand pounds of pepper.

13. But the devoted city enjoyed only a short respite. Honorius refusing to comply with some of the demands of Alaric, that leader returned to Rome, and by threatening to destroy their magazines of provisions, and again reduce them to famine, induced the inhabitants to open the gates to him. At his command, the terrified senate elected a new emperor. They invested with the imperial dignity, Attalus, prefect of the city. Honorus had no alternative but to acknowledge the claims of his competitor. But the new emperor was not long left in possession of the throne. The same hands which bestowed them soon stripped him of his honors, and Attalus returned to private life.

3

a

p

a

k

er

CT

sti

pr

m

ret

thi

18

his

the

côt

ing

hus

edi

Ro

Mö

tos

pear

14. The peace between Honorius and Alaric was not of long continuance. The vacillating councils of the emperor, soon gave cause of offence to the barbarian king, and again he returned to wreak his vengeance on Rome. The Silarian gate was opened to him by treachery, and at midnight the wretched inhabitants were aroused by the sound of the Gothic trumpet. For six days, the imperial city was given up to the avagice and licentious fury of the barbarians. Many private dwellings and splendid public edifices were consumed by fire. Many thousands of the helpless inhabitants perished by the swords of the barbarians, and more were carried into a captivity worse than . death. The sudden death of Alaric put an end to the ravages of the Goths in Italy, but a series of prudent. regulations were scarcely sufficient, during a period of seven years, to restore the splendor of Rome. A. D. 410.—Year of Rome 1163. Itimism

15. Constantine, a private soldier in the army of Brimin, had been elevated to the imperial dignity by the troops of that country. He crossed with his army into

of

to

CD.

.....

or.

dge

Nas

nds-

and

a signing

the

ing,

dat.

the

the

blic

the

barnin them

the

dent

l of

. D.

are st

Brit

the

Gau, and soon obtained possession of that province; so that for some time the Alps formed the boundary between the dominions of the two emperors. After his death, a rapid succession of usurpers continued to arise, and the empire was kept in a constant state of turmoil. Britain threw off the yoke of the Romans, and was acknowledged by the emperor as an independent province. A. D. 409. Year of Rome 1162.

16. Honorius died after a reign of twenty-eight years, and was succeeded by his nephew, Valentinian Third, then a child of six years. Valentinian was a weak and vicious prince, and during his long reign the work of decay rapidly advanced. A vast number of Huns, under Attila, their king, ravaged at pleasure both the eastern and western empires. Geneseric, at the head of an army of Vandals, crossed over into Africa, and after a long and bloody struggle, succeeded in obtaining possession of the Roman provinces in that country. Valentinian was at length murdered, at the instigation of Petronius Maximus, in revenge for a personal injury, after a despicable reign of thirty years. A. D. 455, year of Rome 1208.

17. Maximus was immediately elected by the senate as his successor, but he did not long survive his elevation to the throne. Eudoxia, widow of the late emperor, was compelled into marriage with his successor. She, burning to revenge her own injuries and the death of her husband, besought the aid of Geneseric. Maximus showed himself incapable of even attempting the defence of Rome, and when Geneseric with an army of Vandals and Moors, landed at the mouth of the Tiber, he determined to seek safety in flight. No sooner, however, did he appear in the streets, than he was attacked by the indignant

multitude, and killed, after an inefficient reign of three months.

18. Three days after the death of Maximus, Geneserie entered Rome. A period of forty-five years had served to efface the fears of the Gothic invasion, and in some measure to restore the pomp and splendor of the imperial city. But once again it was given up to the relentless fury of a barbarian army. The pillage lasted fourteen days and nights. During this time, every thing of value, whether found in the imperial palace, in private dwellings, or in public buildings, was either destroyed, or deposited in the vessels of the conquerors. Geneseric then set sail for Carthage, carrying with him, besides the treasures of Rome, a vast number of captive, among whom were the empress Eudoxia and her daughter.

19. For some years after this, came a succession of emperors, who held the title without the power of royalty. Their dominion did not even nominally extend beyond the Alps. At length, the very name of emperor of the west expired upon the abdication of Augustulus, and Cdoacer, general of the Heruli, assumed the title of king of Italy. Thus the power which had conquered, and for so many ages given laws to the world, was no more. The Roman Empire had ceased to exist. A. D. 476, year of Roma 1229.

Questions on Chapter Twenty-eight.

THE REAL

17

18

19

¥ .

107 .51

- 1. What is said of the empire after the death of Constantine 7. What of the reign of Constantius 1
- 2. Who succeeded Constantius? What of the character of Julian ? What is said of the Persian war ?
 - What of the death of Julian 1
- 2. What is said of Jovian ? Who succeeded him ?
 - Whom did Valentinian associate with himself in the government f

How did he divide the empire ? By whom was he succeeded 1 What is said of Gratian ? Whom did he associate with himself in the government ? What is said of Theodosius 1 5. What of the last years of Gratian's life 1 How did Theodosius act 1 6. Were these conditions heeded by Maximus ? What was his fate 1 What is said of Valentinian 1 Who succeeded Theodosius ? 7. What of the empire after this time ? What is said of A. cadius ? 8. What is said of the reign of Honorius 1 What of Stilicho ? 9. What happened during this reign ? To what part of the empire did the barbarians first direct their arms ? Into what country did they then pass ? What is said of Stilicho ? Where did they soon after penetrate ? What of Honorius ? Who for a time saved Italy 1 10. What more formidable enemy now appeared ? How did Stilicho subdue them ? 11. Who again invaded Italy ? What did he do ? 12. What is said of the ambassadors ? 1843 What reply did Alaric make to them 7 What terms did he at length fix ? 13. What did Alaric soon after do ? Who was made emperor 1 Did he reign long 1 14. What gave cause of offence to Alaric 1 Upon whom did he wreak his vengeance ? Tas. What is said of the destruction of the city ? What of the death of Alarie ? 10. What usurpers arose ? When did Britain throw off the Roman yoke ? 16. What occurred during the reign of Valentinian ?

What is said of his death ? 17. Who succeeded him ? What is said of Eudoxia ? What of Maximus ? What was his fate ?

18. What is said of Generic ?

. What of the destruction of the city ? What of the captives ?

19. What is said of the empire for some years 7

What of Odoacer ?

in

eď

00

ial :

25

en

ue,

gt,

ted

sail

s of

the

of

lty.

the

rest

cer,

aly.

any

man

ome

2

ian 1

THE END.

Printed by H. Ramsay: Montreel.

PRIZE SCHOOL BOOKS.

The Subscriber obtained Diplomas at the Provincial Exhibitions, held at Montreal and Hamilton, in 1853, for the best collection of School Books printed and bound in Canada.

NATIONAL SERIES.

up in Schools.

First Book of Lessons. Second Book of Lessons. Sequel to the Second Book. Third Book of Lessons. Fourth Book of Lessons. Fifth Book of Lessons. First Book of Arithmetic and Key.

General Lesson, to be hung |English Grammar and Key. Book-keeping and Key. Treatise on Mensuration. Appendix to Mensuration, for the use of Teachers. Elements of Geometry. Introduction to Geography and History, with Maps, Plates, &c., new edition, much improved.

Large coloured Maps for School Rooms.

CURRICULUM LATINUM.

Cornelius Nepos. Virgilii Georgica. Cicero de Amicitia. Cicero de Senectute. **Ovidii** Fasti.

Casar de Bello Gallico. Q. Curtius. Taciti Agricola. Horatii Čarmina.

CANADIAN EDITIONS-SCHOOL BOOKS.

The Canadian Primer. Manson's Primer. Mayor's Spelling Book. Carpenter's Spelling Book. Webster's Spelling Book. Walker's Dictionary. Walkingame's Arithmetic.

Lennie's Grammar. Murray's English Reader. Murray's English Grammar. Marray's Small ditto. Ewing's Canadian Canadian School Geography.

CATECHISMS. &c.

The Shorter Catechism.

The Same, with Proofs.

The Mother's Catechiam, containing common things needs sary to be known at an early age.

The Second Catechism, being a Sequel to the First. The Child's Own Prayer Book.

Catechism for the Instruction of Communicants of the Lord's Supper, by the late Dr. Andrew Thomson. Lessons on the Truth of Christianity. Catechism of Universal History.

Catechism of the History of England.

ENGLISH SCHOOL BOOKS.

· 4. . .

In very great variety, such as are used in the principal Colleges and Schools throughout the Province.

H. RAMBAY.

rovincial Exhi-53. for the best in Canada.

with "it

NET IL CONTRACTOR

Maria Miles

attime 1

ar and Key. nd Key. nsuration. ensuration, for achers. o Geography with Maps, new edition, ed. ms.

M. Gallicc.

L BOOKS. ar.

h Reader. h Grammar. ditto. dian School

inst.

S. the princite. ISAY,

